

GOVERNMENT OF INDIA  
DEPARTMENT OF ARCHAEOLOGY  
CENTRAL ARCHAEOLOGICAL  
LIBRARY

---

CLASS 3374

CALL No 417.8 *Lam*

D.G.A. 79.













# INTRODUCTION TO THE DEVANAGARI SCRIPT

FOR STUDENTS OF  
SANSKRIT, HINDI, MARATHI  
GUJARATI AND BENGALI



# INTRODUCTION TO THE DEVANAGARI SCRIPT

FOR STUDENTS OF  
SANSKRIT, HINDI, MARATHI  
GUJARATI AND BENGALI

BY

H. M. LAMBERT, M.A. Cantab.

*Senior Lecturer in Marathi (Maharaja Gaekwad's Lectureship)  
in the School of Oriental and African Studies, University of London*

WITH A FOREWORD BY

PROFESSOR J. R. FIRTH, O.B.E., M.A.

*Professor of General Linguistics in the University of London*



3374

417.8  
Lam

GEOFFREY CUMBERLEGE  
OXFORD UNIVERSITY PRESS

**MUNSHI RAM MANOHAR LAL**

SANSKRIT & HINDI BOOK-SELLERS

NAI SARAK, DELHI-8.



*Oxford University Press, Amen House, London E.C. 4*

GLASGOW NEW YORK TORONTO MELBOURNE WELLINGTON

BOMBAY CALCUTTA MADRAS KARACHI CAPE TOWN IRADAN

*Geoffrey Cumberlege, Publisher to the University*

*First published 1953*

CENTRAL ARCHAEOLOGICAL  
LIBRARY, NEW DELHI.

Acc. No. 3374

Date 10. 9. 55

Call No. 417.8/Lam

PRINTED IN GREAT BRITAIN

## FOREWORD

It is a commonplace of linguistics to acknowledge the debt we owe to the ancient Indian grammarians and to couple with it the name of Sir William Jones. It was he who first set a proper value on the Devanagari and Arabic scripts in his dissertation as President of the Asiatic Society of Bengal on the Orthography of Asiatic Words in Roman Letters. His chart of suggested symbols for the transliteration of the Devanagari, with the addition of letters for Arabic and Persian, is the first presentation of what may be called a phonetic alphabet on such a scale. He finds the Arabic alphabet almost perfect for Arabic itself:—

'Not a letter could be added or taken away without manifest inconvenience. The same may indubitably be said of the Dévanāgarī system, which, as it is more naturally arranged than any other, shall here be the standard of my particular observations on Asiatic letters. Our English alphabet and orthography are disgracefully and almost ridiculously imperfect.'

He aims at using diacritics *common in Europe* rather than new letters—and symbols from 'fluxions' or mathematics—so as to equal the Devanagari itself in precision and clearness.

A system of writing and spelling is the foundation of a system of grammar. Meillet went so far as to say that the foundations of the science of grammar were laid by the Indians. For all languages employing forms of the Devanagari script, the writing system and the spelling carry implications of phonological analysis and statement. They are at once practice and theory and deserve the first attentions of all students. This is well illustrated in Miss Lambert's work on the Devanagari script, and it will be agreed that the presentation of the phonological patterns, such as 'junctions' occurring in words or arising out of 'sandhi' in Sanskrit, and other characteristic patterns in the modern languages, is clear, systematic, and original, and particularly interesting in Bengali. The treatment of conjunct characters in the third chapter of each section is new, and apart from its intrinsic interest may be taken as an indication of what is lost when the structure of the Devanagari system is superseded by the usual roman transliterations. In addition to this study of the writing system, attention is rightly given here to calligraphy, for the practice of the hand is an obligation no less compelling than that of the tongue and both are expressions not only of courteous relations but of disciplined knowledge.

Miss Lambert has consistently applied the All-India Roman Alphabet to all five languages in order to make comparison possible whether the languages are known to the student or not. This treatment could be extended to the Dravidian languages. By this

means it has been found possible to make a systematic statement of the various conventions governing the use of the Sanskrit writing system for the modern languages.

The Sanskrit and Hindi sections are published separately in one volume since they employ one script and will presumably be more generally required, but the appeal of the entire work is to those whose interests range from India through Further India to the Indonesian Islands following the Sanskrit system of writing.

I have been acquainted with Miss Lambert's work in Indian studies since 1937, first in Western India and later as a colleague in London. It gave me great pleasure to be asked to write this brief foreword to her work on a subject which I have always held to be of high importance and the results of which are now offered to students of Sanskrit and the four principal Sanskrit languages of India.

J. R. FIRTH



## PREFACE

Good writing, the understanding of the writing system and the formation of a good hand, is as important a part of the study of the written language as good pronunciation is of the study of the spoken language. Yet too little time is usually given to the teaching of writing to students of Sanskrit and of the modern Indian languages; writing is generally left for the student to teach himself as best he can. The result is that many students neither have an adequate understanding of the writing system and the difference between a syllabic and an alphabetic method of representation, nor know how the characters of the script are written and what features are important for the formation of a cultured literate hand. It is hoped that this book will provide not only a guide to students learning to write the scripts which are described in each section, but will also give them a fuller understanding of the special nature of the scripts and the adjustments which are made in the Sanskrit system in order to use it for writing the modern languages of northern India.

The notation used for the transcription of the scripts in this work is the All-India Roman Alphabet devised by Professor J. R. Firth of the School of Oriental and African Studies, University of London, and used already in several publications—A. H. Harley, *Colloquial Hindustani*, T. Grahame Bailey, *Teach Yourself Hindustani*, and my own *Marathi Language Course*. The use of this transcription necessitates the use of certain conventions, particularly that of the representation of the 'inherent vowel', in final characters when listing the contents of each section of the work. The transcription of the Sanskrit terms in the Sanskrit section is entirely systematic; but owing to the varying realization of the characters of the script in certain positions in words in the modern languages, it has been necessary to use in the Contents of the other sections certain conventions which are discussed in the text. An example of such conventions occurs in the writing of such Sanskrit terms, used by grammarians in the modern languages, as 'āntasth' and 'uugm', in which the realization of the 'inherent vowel' of the final character varies from a short glide-vowel to a full syllable. As it is beyond the scope of this work to make a fine analysis of the varying realization of such final characters, it is necessary to establish certain conventions with regard to the transcription of them. These conventions are of necessity anticipated in the Contents.

Some degree of repetition has been inevitable in order to preserve the basic unity of the description of the Devanagari system of writing while allowing for specialization

in each of the languages. While this repetition may at times seem irksome to the reader, it has the advantage of facilitating comparison of one section with another.

The words given in each section to illustrate the writing and reading of the various scripts have been selected in order to provide examples of every character or combination of characters which occurs in the language under consideration. Some characters occur only in colloquial forms or in loanwords from other languages, including English. In order to illustrate the use of all the characters, examples are drawn, therefore, from the whole range of vocabulary, from colloquial forms occurring in modern speech to learned Sanskrit loanwords occurring only in literary texts. Any word which occurs in a standard dictionary is a word which the student may have to read and illustrates the use of the characters of the script.

This study of the Devanagari script owes its inspiration to the suggestion and encouragement of Professor Firth, to whom my thanks are first due. But a work of this nature could not have been accomplished without reference to experts in the languages discussed, and I am greatly indebted to my colleagues of both the Department of India, Pakistan and Ceylon, and the Department of Phonetics and Linguistics, of the School, for their co-operation and guidance. I am especially indebted to Miss G. M. Summers, formerly Lecturer in Bengali in this School, for her collaboration in the Bengali section, without which the study of the Bengali script could not have been included in this work. The two scribes who have written the script portions of the book, Miss W. Westover and Mr. P. Pritchard, must also be given recognition for their careful and accurate work.

Finally I wish to express my appreciation of the great generosity of the School of Oriental and African Studies for their subvention towards the publication of this book; and of the help and advice given by the Oxford University Press on all matters concerning its production.

H. M. L.



# CONTENTS

	page
Foreword	v
Preface	vii
Introduction: The Devanagari Script	1
Notation	2
Calligraphy	5
SANSKRIT SECTION	
Chapter 1. Arrangement of the Syllabary	11
Sanskrit syllabary in roman notation	12
Sanskrit phonetic terms	13
Chapter 2. Characters of the Syllabary	15
1. Consonant Characters	15
i. Characters of the vergliye group	16
ii. Characters of the antehathe group	18
iii. Characters of the uugmen group, and Vedic ]e	19
2. Vowel Characters and Vowel Signs	21
i. Vowel characters	21
ii. Vowel signs	23
3. Modifiers	26
i. anusvareh	26
ii. visergeh	30
4. The Complete Syllabary	31
5. Numerals	32
6. Punctuation	32
Chapter 3. Conjunct Characters	33
1. Construction of Conjunct Characters	33
2. Contexts of Conjunct Characters	35
3. Classification of Conjunct Characters	37
Class 1. Two similar characters joined	38
Class 2. Two vergliye characters joined	39
Class 3. Characters joined with antehathe characters	43
i. with following ye	43
ii. with following ve	44
iii. with preceding or following re	45
iv. with preceding or following le and ]e	47
Class 4. vergliye characters joined with preceding or following uugmen characters	48
i. with ]e, se and sa	48
ii. with he	50
Transcription of reading examples	51



## HINDI SECTION

	page
Chapter 1. Arrangement of the Syllabary	57
Hindi syllabary in roman notation	59
Chapter 2. Characters of the Syllabary	61
1. Consonant Characters	61
Realisation of ekar consonant characters	62
i. Characters of the vergiyy group	63
ii. Characters of the antesth group	64
iii. Characters of the uusm group	65
2. Vowel Characters and Vowel Signs	67
i. Vowel Characters	67
ii. Vowel Signs	67
Realisation of characters in special contexts	69
3. Modifiers	70
i. anusvar and candr-bindu	70
ii. viserg	73
4. The Complete Syllabary	73
5. Numerals	74
6. Punctuation	74
Chapter 3. Conjunct Characters	75
1. Contexts of Conjunct Characters in Hindi	75
2. Realisation of Conjunct Characters in Hindi	76
3. Classes of Conjunct Characters	76
Class 1. Two similar characters joined	77
Class 2. Two vergiyy characters joined	78
Class 3. Characters joined with antesth characters	79
i. with following ye	79
ii. with following ve	80
iii. with preceding or following re	80
iv. with preceding or following le	81
Class 4. vergiyy characters joined with preceding or following uusm characters	82
i. with fe, se and se	82
ii. with he	83
Hindi prose passage	84
Transcription of reading examples	85

MARATHI SECTION

	page
Chapter 1. Arrangement of the Syllabary	91
Marathi syllabary in roman notation	92
Chapter 2. Characters of the Syllabary	94
1. Consonant Characters	95
Realisation of əkar consonant characters	96
i. Characters of the vergiyy group	96
ii. Characters of the əntəsth group	99
iii. Characters of the uṣṣm group, and ʃə	100
2. Vowel Characters and Vowel Signs	102
i. Vowel Characters	102
ii. Vowel Signs	103
Modern forms of Marathi vowel characters	103
Realisation of characters in special contexts	105
Realisation of characters of the cə-verg	106
3. Modifiers	108
i. ənuṣvar	108
ii. viṣərg	111
4. The Complete Syllabary	112
5. Numerals	112
6. Punctuation	112
Rules of Marathi Orthography	113
Chapter 3. Conjunct Characters	118
1. Contexts of Conjunct Characters in Marathi	118
2. Realisation of Conjunct Characters in Marathi	119
3. Classes of Conjunct Characters	119
Class 1. Two similar characters joined	120
Class 2. Two vergiyy characters joined	121
Class 3. Characters joined with əntəsth characters	122
i. with following yə	122
ii. with following və	123
iii. with preceding or following rə	124
iv. with preceding or following lə	126
Class 4. vergiyy characters joined with preceding or following uṣṣm characters	127
i. with ʃə, ʒə and sə	127
ii. with hə	128
Marathi prose passage	129
Transcription of reading examples	130

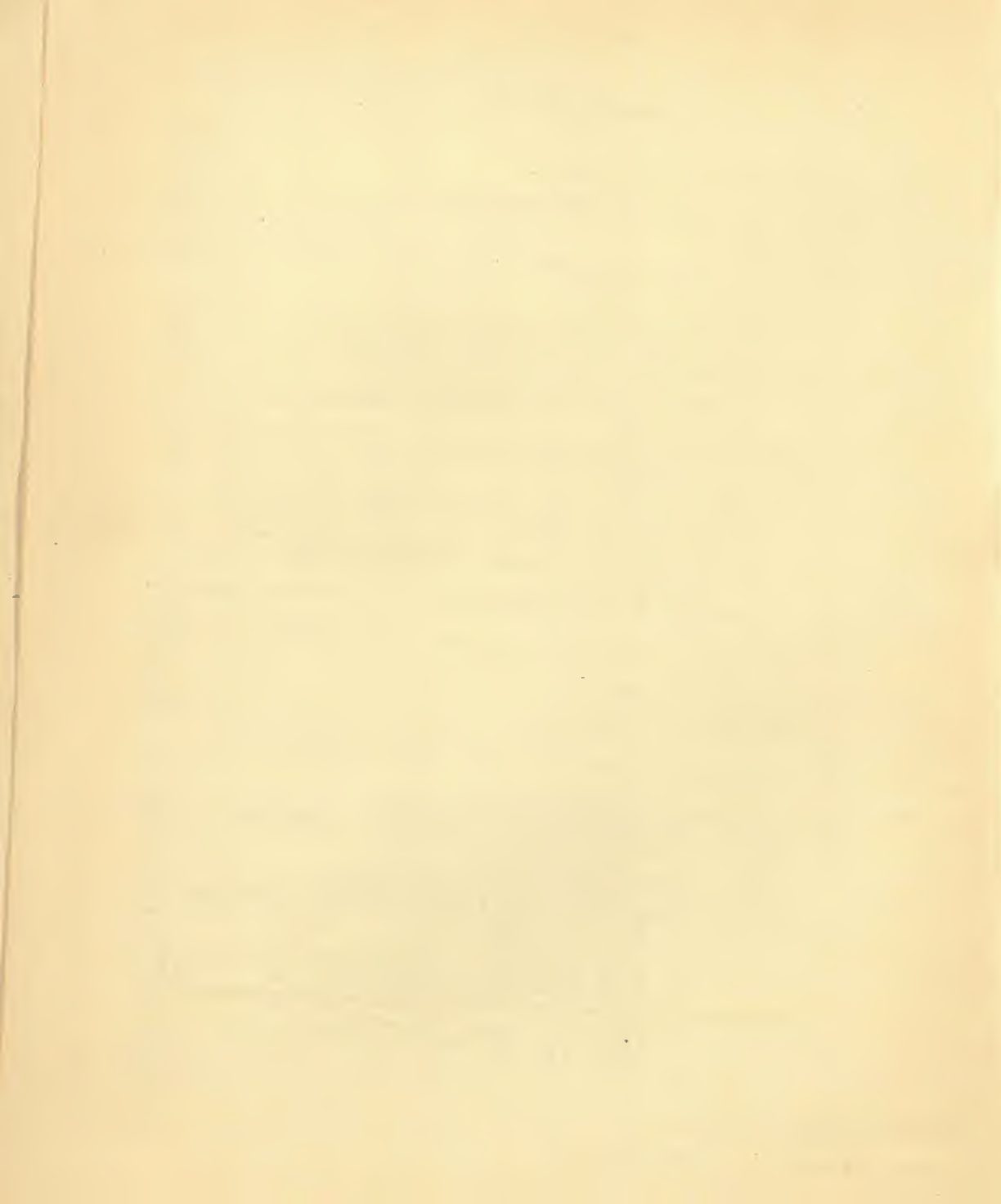
## GUJARATI SECTION

Chapter 1. Arrangement of the Syllabary	page 135
Gujarati syllabary in roman notation	136
Chapter 2. Characters of the Syllabary	138
1. Consonant Characters	138
Realisation of akar consonant characters	139
i. Characters of the vergiily group	140
ii. Characters of the antesth group	142
iii. Characters of the uugm group, and ]e	143
2. Vowel Characters and Vowel Signs	144
i. Vowel Characters	144
ii. Vowel Signs	145
Realisation of vowels 'e' and 'o'	146
Realisation of characters in special contexts	148
Realisation of 'de' and 'dhe'	150
Orthography of 'i' and 'u'	150
3. Modifiers	152
i. anusvar	152
ii. viserg	154
4. The Complete Syllabary	155
5. Numerals	156
6. Punctuation	156
Rules of Gujarati Orthography	156
Chapter 3. Conjunct Characters	157
1. Contexts of Conjunct Characters in Gujarati	157
2. Realisation of Conjunct Characters in Gujarati	158
3. Classes of Conjunct Characters	159
Class 1. Two similar characters joined	159
Class 2. Two vergiily characters joined	160
Class 3. Characters joined with antesth characters	161
i. with following ye	161
ii. with following ve	162
iii. with preceding or following re	162
iv. with preceding or following le	164
Class 4. vergiily characters joined with preceding or following uugm characters	165
i. with ]e , ]a and ]e	165
ii. with ha	166
Gujarati prose passage	167
Transcription of reading examples	168



BENGALI SECTION

	page
Chapter 1. Arrangement of the Syllabary	173
Notation	174
Bengali syllabary in roman notation	175
Calligraphy	177
Chapter 2. Characters of the Syllabary	179
1. Consonant Characters	
i. Characters of the vergiiya group	181
Realisation of skar consonant characters	183
ii. Characters of the entestha group	186
iii. Characters of the uugma group	188
Realisation of skar consonant characters in verbal forms	190
2. Vowel Characters and Vowel Signs	192
i. Vowel Characters	192
ii. Vowel Signs	194
Realisation of consonant and vowel characters in special contexts	195
a. Realisation of skar consonant characters	195
b. Realisation of vowel characters in special contexts	197
Realisation of entestha ya	199
3. Modifiers	204
i. candra-bindu and anusvara	204
ii. visarga	206
4. The Complete Syllabary	206
5. Numerals	207
6. Punctuation	207
Chapter 3. Conjunct Characters	208
1. Construction of Conjunct Characters	208
2. Contexts and Realisation of Conjunct Characters	209
3. Classes of Conjunct Characters	211
Class 1. Two similar characters joined	211
Class 2. Two vergiiya characters joined	212
Class 3. Characters joined with entestha characters	214
i. with following ye	214
ii. with following ve	216
iii. with preceding or following re	218
iv. with preceding or following la	220
Class 4. vergiiya characters joined with preceding or following uugma characters	221
i. with fa, ga and sa	221
ii. with ha	223
Bengali prose passage	225
Transcription of Reading Examples	226



## INTRODUCTION

### The Devanagari Script

The script traditionally referred to as the Devanagari Script is used in writing Sanskrit and, of the modern languages of northern India, Hindi, Marathi and Nepali. The script used in writing Gujarati is a slightly modified form of the Devanagari script, and the scripts used in writing Bengali and Panjabi are related to the Devanagari script, though this relation is apparent in only some of the characters. The writing system, based on the character representing the syllable, is the same for all these languages. However, in order to use this system for writing the modern languages, which have each developed in their own particular way from the original Sanskrit, a number of conventions have become necessary in reading from the script, conventions which vary with the special features of each language. The realisation of the characters as they are used for writing Hindi, Bengali, Marathi and Gujarati, and the conventions which have become established in each language, are described in the various sections of this work. Though the Bengali script differs considerably from the Devanagari script in the form of most of the characters, the study of it is included in this work because the writing system is the same as the Sanskrit writing system, and the conventions by which



this system is adapted for writing Bengali have much in common with the conventions used in the other modern languages. An examination of these conventions makes possible an interesting comparison both between the writing of these four languages and that of Sanskrit, and between the writing of the modern languages themselves.

The origin of the name 'Devanagari' is obscure. The shorter form of the name is 'Nagari'(nagerii), which has been variously interpreted. It is thought by some to be the name given to the writing of 'the people of the city'(nagerem, 'a city'); by others it is said to derive its name from the Nagar Brahmins of Gujarat.

### Notation

The system of roman notation used in this text for transcribing the Devanagari characters is the All-India Roman Notation<sup>1</sup>. Three minor modifications have been introduced in this text in order to adapt the notation for transcribing both Sanskrit and the modern languages.

These modifications are :-

- i. The use of the vowels i ('short' i) and ii ('long' ii) instead of the vowels y and i ; and of the vowels u ('short' u) and uu ('long' uu) for the vowels w and u .
- ii. The use of the letter ŋ instead of ñ for representing the mark of nasalisation known as the anusvar.
- iii. The placing of a micron above the letter y in the diphthong ey , and above the letter v in the diphthong ev , thus: eÿ , eÿ .

---

1. See Preface.

This mark distinguishes the transcription of the diphthongs from the transcription of combinations of characters which are realised in certain contexts as ə-y and ə-v, not distinguishable in ordinary speech, in the modern languages, from the diphthongs.

Besides these modifications, it is necessary to make certain additions to the notation in order to represent characters used in writing the modern languages but not used in Sanskrit, and certain modified characters used in Hindi and Bengali. The complete notation used in the Sanskrit syllabary is this:

Vowels:    ə    a    i    ii    u    uu    e    əỵ    o    əṿ  
and    r    rr    l    ll , for the syllabic consonants.

Modifiers<sup>1</sup>:    ŋ (representing the anusvara) and  
                  h (representing the visarga)

Consonants:    k    kh    g    gh    ŋ  
                  c    ch    j    jh    ɲ  
                  t̪    t̪h    d̪    d̪h    ɳ  
                  t    th    d    dh    n  
                  p    ph    b    bh    m  
                  y    r    l    v ;    ʃ    ʂ    s    h  
                  ɭ , used in transcribing Vedic Sanskrit

The additional letters used in the syllabaries of the modern languages are these:

ɽ and ɽh for transcribing the modified forms of the characters representing d̪ and d̪h , in Hindi and Bengali, and for

---

1. For the use of this term, see Sanskrit section, Chapter 1.

indicating the intervocallic realisation, in certain words, of the Gujarati character representing  $q$  .

$q$  ,  $x$  ,  $y$  ,  $z$  and  $f$  , for transcribing certain modified Devanagari characters used in Hindi in writing Persian and Arabic loanwords.  $ts$  ,  $z$  and  $zh$  , for transcribing characters of the 'palatal' class in Marathi, when they are realised with alveolar articulation.

In modern spoken Gujarati and modern spoken Bengali, certain vowel sounds occur which are not separately represented in the script. For indicating the contexts in which such vowel sounds occur, the three symbols  $e$  ,  $o$  and  $\ae$  are used.

The sign of nasalisation,  $\sim$  , is used in transcribing the modifier representing nasalisation<sup>1</sup> when it is realised, in the modern languages, as the nasalisation of a vowel and not as a nasal consonant.

This roman notation is used for writing all the Sanskrit grammatical terms referring to the syllabaries of Sanskrit and of the modern languages, the classification of the characters and the phonetic description of their realisation. The names of the languages, the scripts, and grammatical terms, such as 'sandhi'(sendhi), which are in regular use in English, are written in their conventional English form.

The Sanskrit syllabary, as arranged by the Sanskrit grammarians, is given in the roman notation in the Sanskrit section<sup>2</sup>, and serves as a standard with which the syllabaries of the modern languages can be compared.

---

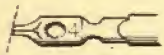
1. See Sanskrit Section, Chapter 2, 3.1.a. anusvare.

2. *ibid.*, Chapter 1.



Calligraphy

The writing of the Devanagari characters should be practised at first with a reed or bamboo pen. Such pens are still in use in many parts of India, and in many schools Indian children are taught first to write on a large scale with a broadly cut bamboo pen. Writing in this way will train the eye to recognise easily details of difference and will train the hand to write a standard form of the characters with the broad and thin strokes in the right place and proportion. These pens are cut in the same way as a quill pen, except that the point is cut to slant in the opposite direction from that of the quill used for English writing with the tilted axis. The English pen, when cut for the tilted axis, looks like this from the back:



writing thus:



The pen cut for the Devanagari script looks like this from the back:



writing thus:



The pen should be held in such a way that the thin line, made by the cut edge, falls from left to right at an angle of 45 degrees from a line drawn horizontally across the page. The broad stroke then forms a right-angle with the thin stroke and crosses the horizontal line of the page at an angle of 45 degrees. Care must be taken not to change the angle of the pen during the writing of curved or rounded strokes, as this will change the shape and balance of the character.

Some of the typical strokes of the script should be practised until good control of the pen, held at the right angle, is established before the characters themselves are written. For example:



The use of the broad pen should be continued until a good style of handwriting is formed; the introduction of writing with an ordinary pen, and without sufficient attention to the details of line and form, often interferes with the formation of a good hand.

In the illustrations given below, which may be used as writing exercises, the characters are grouped so as to show different combinations of strokes, and to draw attention to similarities and to small but important differences. It will be seen that some of the characters have an upright stroke, others are curved or rounded, without an upright stroke; but all have the head-stroke, though it is not always written right across the top of the character. The alignment of the characters is made by this head-stroke, that is, by the top of the character, though there is an invisible alignment also by the bottom of the character. For this reason, it is well to practice writing at first between two lines; if one line is used, the characters should be written from the line downwards, not on the line.

The general method of writing the characters is this: first, the characteristic part of the character, usually on the left side of the upright stroke; then the upright stroke, if there is one; and finally the head-stroke. The head-stroke binds the whole character together, as will be seen when vowel signs and other marks are added. The general direction of making the strokes is from the top downwards, and from left to right. But the order of the strokes in some characters, and their direction, differ from this general rule, and where this is so, the calligraphy of particular characters is illustrated when these are introduced in the chapters which follow.



Examples of Devanagari characters, showing the order in which the strokes are written:

व-० ७ व व । ब-व व ब । क-व क क  
 ग-ग ग । न-न न । म-म् म म । भ-भ भ  
 र-२ र र । स-र र स स । ख-र ख ख  
 ह-८ ह ह ह <sup>or</sup> ड ह ह । ई-इ ई ई

Examples of similarity and difference between characters:

घ द्य ध      ट ठ ढ ढ़ दृ ड इ



20 21 22 23 24 25 26 27 28 29 30  
31 32 33 34 35 36 37 38 39 40 41  
42 43 44 45 46 47 48 49 50 51 52  
53 54 55 56 57 58 59 60 61 62 63

22 23 24 25 26 27 28 29 30 31 32

## SANSKRIT SECTION



# CHAPTER 1

## ARRANGEMENT OF THE SYLLABARY

When the characters of the Devanagari Script, देवनागरी , are arranged in the traditional order, they constitute a series of syllables which may be regarded as the basis of the Sanskrit phonological system. Each character represents a syllable, and is called अक्षरम् (akṣarəm). The series of characters in the syllabary is called वर्णमाला (varṇamāla), and consists of:-

Fourteen vowel characters,

Two modifiers and

Thirtythree consonant characters.

The syllabary used in writing Vedic Sanskrit includes one more consonant character.

In reading aloud from the script, a vowel character is realised as a syllable consisting of a vowel, स्वरः (svaraḥ), and a consonant character is realised as a syllable consisting of an initial consonant, व्यञ्जनम् (vyañjanam) followed by the vowel ə . This vowel, when realised with a consonant, is generally referred to in English textbooks as the 'inherent' vowel. The term 'modifier' is used here to refer to the two signs which indicate some modification in the realisation of the character with which they are written. These two signs are usually referred to individually, as the 'anusvaraḥ' and the 'visargaḥ', as there is no Sanskrit term which is used to refer to them together.

Each character is referred to, for instance, in spelling, as the syllable which it represents, and the particle कार (karə); for example, आकार (akarə), इकार (ikarə), ककार (kakarə); तकार (takarə).

The roman syllabary given below corresponds in arrangement and classification with the Devanagari syllabary. As the consonant characters are discussed first in this work, the table of consonant syllables is placed first in this syllabary.

CONSONANTS with ə			1 Velar	2 Palatal	3 Cacum- inal	4 Dental	5 Labial
Plosives	Voiceless	Unaspirated	kə	cə	tə	tə	pə
		Aspirated	khə	chə	ʈhə	thə	phə
	Voiced	Unaspirated	gə	jə	də	də	bə
		Aspirated	ghə	jhə	qhə	dhə	bhə
	Nasal		ŋə	ɲə	ɳə	nə	mə
Semi-vowels				yə	rə	lə	və
Fricatives				ʃə	ʂə	sə	
Aspirate			hə				
Lateral					ɭə		
VOWELS, associated with consonant-classes			ə a	i ii e əy	r rr	.l ll	u uu o əv
MODIFIERS			Nasal -ṃ	Aspirated -h			



The character represented by *va* in the roman table is usually realised with labio-dental articulation in reading from a Sanskrit text. The retroflex lateral consonant [ɭ] occurs only in Vedic Sanskrit. The vowel 'syllabic l' does not occur in Sanskrit, but the character representing it is traditionally included in the script syllabary.

The main feature of the syllabary is the arrangement of the consonant characters in groups according to the position and the manner of articulation of the sounds which they represent. The following Sanskrit phonetic terms are used by grammarians in the description of the characters as they are classified in the syllabary:

i. The consonant characters are placed in three groups: characters representing syllables with an initial plosive consonant, that is, a consonant articulated with 'contact', स्पर्शः (sperṣah, 'touch'); characters representing syllables with an initial semi-vowel, that is, 'neither a consonant nor a vowel', अन्तःस्थ (antastha, 'standing between'); and characters representing syllables with an initial fricative consonant, रुष्मन् (uṣman, 'heat').

ii. The five positions of articulation are: कण्ठ्य (kaṇṭhya, 'velar') or जिह्वमूलीय (jihvamūliya, 'root of the tongue'); तालव्य (talavya, 'palatal'); मूर्धन्य (mūrdhanya, 'caudinal'<sup>1</sup>); दन्त्य (dantya, 'dental') and ओष्ठ्य (oṣṭhya, 'labial'). Labio-dental articulation is described as दन्तौष्ठ्य (dantoṣṭhya).

---

1. This term refers to the area of the roof of the mouth with which contact is made by the tongue. Consonants of this class are also described as 'cerebral'. As the retroflexion of the tongue is an important feature in the pronunciation of consonants of this class in the modern languages, the class is described as 'retroflex' in the roman tables of those languages. Cf. Hindi, p.59.

111. The manner of production of the sounds by which the characters are realised is described in the following terms, and in each class of plosive consonants the characters are arranged in this order:

voiceless, unaspirated	- अघोष (aghoṣa <sup>1</sup> ), अल्पप्राण (alpapraṇa <sup>2</sup> )
voiceless, aspirated	- अघोष (aghoṣa), महाप्राण (mahapraṇa <sup>3</sup> )
voiced, unaspirated	- घोषवत् (ghoṣavāt <sup>4</sup> ), अल्पप्राण (alpapraṇa)
voiced, aspirated	- घोषवत् (ghoṣavāt), महाप्राण (mahapraṇa)
nasal	- अनुनासिक (anunasika <sup>5</sup> ),

- 
1. 'without sound', or 'voiceless'.
  2. 'with little breath', or 'unaspirated'.
  3. 'with big breath', or 'aspirated'.
  4. 'with sound' or 'voiced'.
  5. 'nasal'.

## CHAPTER 2

### CHARACTERS OF THE SYLLABARY

The characters of the script are described in this chapter in the same order as that in which the syllables are placed in the roman syllabary: Consonant Characters, Vowel Characters and Vowel Signs, and Modifiers.

The general style of the characters varies from period to period and from region to region. In the older editions of Sanskrit works some characters are found that are now supplanted by newer and more widely used forms; and there is sometimes a marked difference in the style used in printing books in Bombay, Calcutta and other parts of India. The most commonly used of the alternative forms of some of the characters are given below, among the characters of each group. The calligraphy of any characters which are not written according to the general order of strokes given in the Introduction is illustrated when the characters are introduced.

#### 1. Consonant Characters.

The consonant characters of the syllabary represent syllables consisting of an initial consonant followed by the vowel *e*. Consonant characters realised with the vowel *e* are described as अकार (akare). If a character is to be realised as the consonant element only of the syllable, this is shown by writing the mark known as विरामः (virameh) at the foot of the character. The writing of this mark with a character is illustrated below, after the first table.



Characters written with the viramoh are described as हलन्त (halanta), 'ending in a consonant'.

1. Characters of the vergiiye group (वर्गीय).

The twentyfive characters of this group are arranged, as in the roman table given above, in five classes, वर्गः (vergeh), representing the five positions of 'contact', स्पर्शः (sperfeh), used in the articulation of the plosive consonants. Each class consists of five characters, arranged in order according to the manner of production of the consonant of the syllable which they represent.

क-वर्गः  
ke-vergeh

क  
ke

ख  
khe

ग  
ge

घ  
ghe

ङ  
ṅe

च-वर्गः  
ce-vergeh

च  
ce

छ  
che

ज  
je

झ  
jhe

ञ  
ṇe

ट-वर्गः  
ṭe-vergeh

ट  
ṭe

ठ  
ṭhe

ड  
ḍe

ढ  
ḍhe

ण  
ṇe

त-वर्गः  
te-vergeh

त  
te

थ  
the

द  
de

ध  
dhe

न  
ne

प-वर्गः  
pe-vergeh

प  
pe

फ  
phe

ब  
be

भ  
bhe

म  
me

The Bombay form of the character for jhe is झ , and the forms क and ङ are found in older books printed in Calcutta. The Bombay



form of the character for *ṇa* is ण . The Bombay forms of these characters are used in Hindi writing, but the Hindi forms are not used in Marathi writing, or in Sanskrit books printed in Bombay.

### Calligraphy.

All the characters in the above table are written in the way described in the introductory notes on calligraphy, except the following three characters:

ja	ज	१	ज	ज
jha	झ	२	झ	झ
te	ट	१	ट	ट

The writing of the virameh to indicate the realisation of a consonant character as a consonant without the vowel *a* is illustrated by these characters:

क्	च्	ट्	त्	प्
k-	c-	t-	t-	p-

When writing words, which may be of one or more characters, each character is written and completed with the head-stroke before the next character is written. In the reading examples which are given below, words which are usually written with the modifier known as विसर्गः (visergeh)<sup>2</sup> are written in the form in which they occur in various contexts without this modifier. The visergeh is written with reading examples after the modifiers have been discussed. Verbal roots, in the form in which they are given in grammars and dictionaries, are included in the examples in order to illustrate the writing of characters with the virameh.

1. The first stroke in these characters is written from right to left.  
2. See below, under 3. Modifiers, ii.

Reading examples<sup>1</sup>

## 1. One character words

द ध त फ म प न च ड ग  
क भ ज ब घ छ थ ख झ ञ

## 2. Two character words

भट पद धन कड मठ फण घन खच् दध् दम  
छद् भग जड फट पथ बत छग पट् घट गण

## 3. Three character words

गमक जगत् चणक मथन घटक पठक दमथ  
धटक कपट भजक गणक कथम् खजक पदक

## 4. Four and five character words

छदनम् पणनम् नटनम् कथनम् भणनम् जनपद  
गमनम् पठनम् धनमद भणभणम् झणझणम्

ii. Characters of the əntəhsthə<sup>2</sup> group ( अन्तःस्थ )

य र ल व

Bombay form

ल

yə

rə

lə

və

lə

## Calligraphy

lə : Hindi form ८<sup>3</sup> ८ ल ल ल Bombay form ८<sup>3</sup> ल ल ल

These four characters are associated with four of the vərgəh, as indicated in the roman syllabary, and with four of the vowels, thus:

य , yə, associated with the cə-vərgəh, and the vowels i and ii  
र , re, associated with the ʃə-vərgəh, and the syllabic r and rr<sup>4</sup>  
ल , le, associated with the tə-vərgəh, and the syllabic l and ll<sup>4</sup>  
व , ve, associated with the pə-vərgəh, and the vowels u and uu

1. Transcription of examples is given on p.51.

2. 'standing between.' 3. This stroke is written from right to left.

4. See below, under 2. Vowel Characters.

These characters are all described as *alpaprāṇa* and *ghoṣavat*.

व , *vo* , though associated with the labial class, is realised with labio-dental articulation, and described as *दन्तौष्ठ्य* (*dantāvṣṭhya*).

Reading examples<sup>1</sup>

1. One character words

व य र ल ब थ ख त

2. Two character words

लव जल खर वद भर बल वर रण वट्  
लभ् यव धर लय झर रट् रण फल् रध

3. Three character words

तरल लवण भयम् धवल जठर चरण डमर  
नखर लगड चपल भवत् नयन वचर लटभ

4. Words of four or more characters

यमवत् वयनम् गरलम् पदकमल कपटवचनम्

iii. Characters of the *uṣṣmen*<sup>2</sup> group (ऊष्मन्)

श ष स and ह  
ṣa ṣa sa ha

Calligraphy

ṣa : Hindi form श श श Bombay form श श श श  
ha : i. ह ह or ii. ह ह ह

An older form of श is भ , a form still used in joining this character to certain other characters. This form is illustrated later under Conjunct Characters<sup>3</sup>.

1. Transcription of examples is given on p.51.

2. 'hest'

3. See Chapter 3.



The first three characters of this group represent syllables consisting of a fricative consonant with the vowel *ə*, and are described as *əghoṣa* and *mahapraṇa*. The fourth character is realised as an aspirate followed by the vowel *ə*, and is described as *ghoṣavet* and *mahapraṇa*. The uugman characters are associated with the classes thus: श , *ʃə*, with the *ca-vergeh*; ष , *ʃə*, with the *[e-vergeh]*; स , *sə*, with the *te-vergeh*; and ह , *hə*, with the *ke-vergeh*.

The character ह is the last consonant character in the syllabary used in writing classical Sanskrit. In writing Vedic Sanskrit one more character is used, ऌ , *[ə]*, realised as a retroflex lateral consonant followed by the vowel *ə*.

Calligraphy of ऌ : 

Reading examples<sup>1</sup>

1. One character words

ष ह स श प ड र ख

2. Two character words

शर सह षट् वश हस् भूष रस वष् शव  
सत् शठ स्वश कष शस् हय हर क्षप भष

3. Three character words

सरल कलश जहत् वयस् शपथ समय बहल शलम  
यशस् शरट सफल सरस हरक परश रमस हतक

4. Four, five and six character words

दशरथ शकटम् सवयस् कलहम् शसनम् शतशस्  
जलचरम् नवदशकम् सहगमनम् कमलवदन दशशतम्

1. Transcription of examples is given on p.51.



2. Vowel Characters, with corresponding Vowel Signs.

A vowel which constitutes a syllable is written with a vowel character; a vowel which is part of a syllable with an initial consonant is written with a vowel sign added to a consonant character.

1. Vowel Characters.

There are fourteen vowel characters in the वर्णमाला:

अ	आ	इ	ई	उ	ऊ
a	ā	i	ī	u	ū
		ऋ	ॠ	ऌ	ॡ
	Syllabic	r	rr	l	ll
	ए	ऐ	ओ	औ	
	e	ē	o	ō	

The character अ , and the other characters based on the same form, आ , ओ and औ , and the characters ऋ , ॠ , ऌ and ॡ , have these alternative forms:

अ	आ	ओ	औ	ऋ	ॠ	ऌ	ॡ
a	ā	o	ō	r	rr	l	ll

Both forms of these vowel characters are used in Hindi writing; only the Bombay forms are used in Marathi writing. An older form of ओ , o , is ओ<sup>1</sup>. The order of writing the strokes in vowel characters is illustrated by these examples:

a	ॐ	ॐ	अ	अ	o	उ	उ	अ	अ
ā	ॐ	ॐ	आ	आ	ī	इ	ई	ई	
r	ॐ	ॐ	ऋ	ॠ	l	ॐ	ॐ	ॐ	ॐ
ē	ॐ	ॐ	ऐ	ऐ	o	अ	आ	ओ	औ

1. See below, under 3. Modifiers, i. note c.

The vowel characters are referred to as अकार , a-karə, आकार , a-karə, इकार i-karə, and so on. They are related to the five positions of articulation as shown in the table of the roman syllabary. The vowel ll does not occur in Sanskrit words, but the character is traditionally included in the syllabary for the sake of symmetry.

The first ten vowel characters represent five pairs of 'simple' vowels, each pair consisting of a character realised as a 'short' vowel, ह्रस्व , (hrəsvə) and a character realised as a 'long' vowel, दीर्घ , (diirghə). The remaining four characters represent vowels which are described as 'compound' or 'conjunct', संयुक्त , (samyuktə<sup>1</sup>). In the system of modification and combination of vowels known as 'sandhi', सन्धि: , (səndhih), as in the formation of compound words, derived words, and the joining of final and initial vowels in consecutive words in a phrase or sentence, the vowels are grouped thus:

Simple vowels	ə	a	i	ii	u	uu	r	rr	l
गुणः (guṇəh)	ə	a	e		o		ər		əl
वृद्धिः (vrddhih)		a	əy̐		əv̐		ar		al
Examples <sup>2</sup> :	नगरम्	nagerəm		--	नागरिक	nagerike			
	दिव	dive	देव	deve	दैव्य	dəy̐vye			
	भूति	bhuuti		--	भौतिक	bheṽtike			
	कृ	kr	कर्	ker	कार्य	karyə			
	कल्प	klp	कल्पना	kəlpəna	काल्पनिक	kalpenike			

1. See above, Ch.1., and below, 3.1. for the modifier represented by ŋ.  
2. See below, ii, for the vowel signs used in these examples.

Reading examples of words with vowel characters:<sup>1</sup>

1. One character words

ए इ उ अ ऋ ई ऊ ओ ऐ ल आ औ ऋ

2. Words of more than one character

अथ इष् उत् एक इन ओत् अद् ऐरा ऋध्  
ऊह् एध ईश उछ औम् ऋण ऊढ इह उष्  
अद् अल् औम् ओख् ऋच् ऐण उदङ् ऋणम्  
ईषत् ऊहनम् ऋषभ औषधम् ऐषमस् उपकरणम्

ii. Vowel Signs

Each of the vowel characters, except अ , ए , has a corresponding vowel sign which may be added to a consonant character to represent a syllable consisting of an initial consonant followed by one of the vowels a - əv̄ . As the vowel ə is realised with every consonant character unless it is either marked with the viraməh or has one of the vowel signs added to it, there is no sign for this vowel.

The vowel signs, added to the consonant character क , are:

क	का	कि	की	कु	कू
(kə)	ka	ki	kii	ku	kuu
	कृ	कृ	कृ	कृ	
	kr	krr	kī	kīl <sup>2</sup>	
	के	कै	को	कौ	
	ke	kəȳ	ko	kəv̄	

1. Transcription of examples is given on p.51.

2. See note on the vowel lī under Vowel Characters, above.



## Calligraphy

The order of writing the strokes when a vowel sign is added to a consonant character is illustrated in the following examples:

ka	क	का	का	ku	क	कु	कु
ki	।	।क	कि	ki	क	का	की
dhi	।	।ध	धि	bhi	।	।भ	भि
ke	क	के	के	ko	क	का	को

When the vowel signs are added to consonant characters which have an upright stroke, the superscribed signs are placed above the upright stroke, and the subscribed signs are written at the foot of that stroke. When vowel signs are subscribed to rounded characters, they are written below the mid-point of the lowest curve, thus:

छु	दू	दु	दू	दु	हू
chu	duu	du	dhuu	du	huu

Special forms

रु	रू	दृ	शृ	हृ
ru	ruu	dr	jr	hr

An older form of शु is शु<sup>1</sup>, and of हु is हु

The vowel sign of ऋ is not written with र्. The character representing र् with ऋ is written with the superscribed stroke used to represent र् when it is to be realised before another consonant character without an intervening vowel. This stroke is placed over the vowel character ऋ, as in निर्वृति, nirrti<sup>2</sup>.

Mark of 'separation'.

When an initial अ or आ occurs after certain final vowels in the preceding word, the mark ऽ, known as अवग्रहः (avagrehah)<sup>3</sup> is

1. See Ch.2,1.iii. 2. See Ch.3,3.Class 3.iii.a. 3. 'separation'.



written after the vowel in which the final and initial vowels are coalesced, to indicate the presence of two words in the piece. The mark is written once when the initial vowel of the second word is अ, and twice when the initial vowel is आ, as in these examples:

यो अयम् योऽयम् ते अपि तेऽपि सदा आत्मन् सदाऽऽत्मन्  
 yo - ayam yo-yam te - api te-pi sada - atman sada--tman<sup>1</sup>

### Reading examples<sup>2</sup>

#### 1. One character words

नी भू गै सृ दा जि गौ पै मे दू  
 कृ छि नौ है भी धृ शी दृ हि ह

#### 2. Two character words

दूर भीत राम चोर तिङ् दोष शृत धृत रूढ  
 गैर कृश् पौल कृप् दृढ पुर फेण मौल कृत्  
 पितृ मेरु दुषि भीति हृदि गुरु वृधा शिशु सेतु  
 ओतु ईति एतौ ऋतु इति ऊरु ऋषि एणी ईळे

#### 3. Three character words

भूषित विशेष उपाय वैभव पितृन् पौरुष रुचिर भौमिक  
 कुमारी भटिति ठालिनी रूपित औषधि कैकेयी झिरिका  
 विधातृ ऐहिक ठालिन् सुरभि खडिका हेळते

#### 4. Four, five and six character words

एकाकिन् हृषिकेश इतिहास कौशलेय विषूचिका पौराणिक  
 देवनागरी अनुनासिक औपनिषद उपजीविका औपदेशिक  
 उपनिवेशिक औपनायनिक कोऽपि ऋतेऽपि यशोऽपयश

1. त्म, tme, the characters त् and म combined. See Chapter 3, Class 2. iii. 2. Transcription of examples is given on p. 51.

### 3. Modifiers

The two modifiers, known as अनुस्वारः (anusvareh) and विसर्गः (visergeh), are signs which may be added to a character to indicate a modification in the realisation of the character. They are placed in the syllabary after the vowel characters, and, as they cannot be written alone, they are written with the character अ . They may, however, be written with any character.

#### 1. anusvareh, अनुस्वारः 1

This modifier is written as a dot above the character of which it modifies the realisation, thus:

अं	आं	इं	ईं	उं	ऊं	एं	ऐं	ओं	औं
aṁ	āṁ	iṁ	īṁ	uṁ	ūṁ	eṁ	ēṁ	oṁ	ōṁ
कं	कां	किं	कीं	कुं	कूं	कें	कैं	कों	कौं
kaṁ	kāṁ	kiṁ	kīṁ	kuṁ	kūṁ	keṁ	kēṁ	koṁ	kōṁ

#### Calligraphy

The anusvareh is generally added to the character after the vowel sign has been written and before the headstroke is written to complete the character. It is placed above the middle of the character, or over the last upright stroke if there is one, and to the right side of any superscribed vowel sign, for example;

kaṁ	क	कं	कं	daṁ	द	दं	दं	haṁ	ह	हं	हं
gaṁ	ग	गां	गां	giṁ	ग	गिं	गिं	geṁ	गे	गें	गें
dhinṁ	ध	धिं	धिं	bhinṁ	भ	भिं	भिं	ronṁ	र	रें	रें



The anusvareḥ is written with a character in various contexts, and is realised in various ways according to the context.

a. When a word of which the final character represents the formative particle म् occurs in any position except at the end of a line of verse or a sentence, the character म् is omitted before an initial consonant character of a following word and the formative particle is represented by the anusvareḥ. This formative particle is usually written as म् only at the end of a line or a sentence. For example:

येतां विभूतिं योगं च--	येताम्	विभूतिम्	योगम्
yetam vibhuutiṃ yogam ca...	yetam	vibhuutim	yogam

b. The anusvareḥ may be written with an initial or medial character followed by a vergliya character. In this context it is realised as the nasal consonant of the class to which the following character belongs. Examples:

ṃ - ṅ	अंक aṅka (aṅka)	पुंख puṅkha (puṅkha)	लिंग liṅga (liṅga)
ṃ - ṇ	पंच paṅca (paṅca)	वांछ vaṅch (vaṅch)	सिंज् siṅj (siṅj)
ṃ - ṇ	कुंठ kuṅṭha (kuṅṭha)	अंढ aṅḍa (aṅḍa)	पिंड piṇḍa (piṇḍa)
ṃ - n	शान्ति śanti (śanti)	इंदु indu (indu)	बंधु baṇḍhu (baṇḍhu)
ṃ - m	कंप kaṃpa (kaṃpa)	अंबु aṃbu (aṃbu)	कुंभ kuṃbha (kuṃbha)

Another, more usual, method of representing a homorganic nasal is that of combining the appropriate nasal consonant character with



the vergiye character that follows it, that is, **ह्** with characters of the ka-vergeh, **ञ्** with characters of the ca-vergeh, and so on. This method is used also when the formative particle **म्** occurs before an initial vergiye character in a sentence, where consecutive words are joined in sandhi. The calligraphy of such combined characters is illustrated later<sup>1</sup>. Formative particles, such as **अन्ति** , -anti, and **अन्ते** , -ante, are usually written by this method and not with the anusvarah.

The anusvarah is sometimes written to represent -n or -m , in compounds formed from the prefix **सम्**, sam-, and words beginning with **न** or **म** ; e.g. **संनत** sannate, and **संमति** sammati.

c. When the anusvarah is written with a character preceding a character of the antehsthe or the uugmen group, the realisation of it varies according to the position of articulation of the character which follows it, and also with the custom of speakers in different parts of India. The anusvarah preceding an antehsthe character is realised as follows:

Before **य** , ye , as **य्** , m , n or **य** ; e.g.

**संयोग** sanyoge, samyoge, sanयोग or saययोग

Before **र** , re , as **र्य** , m , n or **र** ; e.g.

**संराग** sanrage, samrage, senराग or saरराग

Before **ल** , le , as **ल्य** , m , n or **ल** ; e.g.

**संलय** sanloye, samloye, senलय or saलय

Before **व** , ve , as **व्य** , m , or **व** ; e.g.

**संवाद** sanvade, samvade or saववाद

1. See Chapter 3, Conjunct Characters, Class 2.b.

The anusvarah preceding an uugmen character is realised thus:

Before श , je , as ŋ , m , n , or v̄; e.g.

अंश əŋʃə, əmʃə, ənʃə or əvʃə

Before ष , ʃə , as ŋ , m , nasalisation of the vowel, or v̄; e.g.

हवींषि həviɪŋʃi, həviɪmʃi, həviɪʃi or həviɪv̄ʃi

Before स , sə , as ŋ , m , n , or v̄; e.g.

संसार səŋsərə, səmsərə, sənsərə or səv̄sərə,  
or as nasalisation of the vowel, as in

हिंसा hiŋsa, himsa, hiṽsa or hīsa

पुंसि puŋsi, pumsi, pūsi

Before ह , hə , as ŋ , m , n , or v̄; e.g.

सिंह siŋhə, simhə, sinhə or siṽhə

or as nasalisation of the vowel in सैंह , səȳhə

The sign ॐ is sometimes written above a character preceding an antehattha or an uugmen character to indicate realisation by nasalising the vowel of the syllable instead of by a nasal consonant following the vowel. This sign is called अनुनासिक (enunasika<sup>1</sup>), and it is usually written, in preference to the anusvarah, in the 'sacred syllable' ॐ , (om)<sup>2</sup>

Reading examples<sup>3</sup>

- a. किं मां सुखं हरिं मृतं तनुं अहं पवं ऋषीणां  
b. हिंब पांडु लेंगम् दुंढि जृम् भंभा किंचित् कौंतेय  
c. संयमन संवत् मांस शयु संरूठ संलीन अंहति  
तामहं हृदि संगतामनिशं भृशं रमयामि ।  
किं वनेऽनुसरामि तामिह किं वृथा विलपामि ॥<sup>4</sup>

1. 'nasal'. 2. See above, under 2.1. 3. For transcription of examples, see p.52. . The lines a, b and c correspond to the notes given above under 3.1. 4. Gītagovindakāvya, sarga 3,v.6.



## ii. visargah , विसर्गः 1

The visargah is written as two dots, placed vertically, after a character.

अः	आः	इः	ईः	उः	ऊः	ऋः	एः	ऐः	ओः	औः
ah	ah	ih	iih	uh	uuh	rrh	eh	əyh	oh	əvh
कः	काः	किः	कीः	कु	कू	कृ	के	कै	कोः	कौः
kəh	kah	kih	kiih	kuh	kuuh	krh	keh	kəyh	koh	kəvh

## Calligraphy

The visargah is usually added to a character after every other stroke has been made, including the head-stroke.

e.g. क को को कोः

The realisation of the visargah varies in different parts of India  
a. It may be realised as strong aspiration following the realisation of the character with which it is written, for example

देवः	मालाः	कविः	गुरुः	कवेः	गुणैः	भानौः	गौः
devəh	malah	kəvih	guruh	kəveh	guṇəyh	bhanoh	gəvh

It is realised in this way when it occurs medially, as in

दुःखम् , duhkhem; or as the doubling of the following consonant, as in तपःसु , tepəhsu, tepessu.

b. It may be realised in final position as h following the vowel of the character with which it is written, and a very short repetition of the same vowel after h , as illustrated by this transcription of the examples given above:

devəh <sup>a</sup>	malah <sup>a</sup>	kəvih <sup>i</sup>	guruh <sup>u</sup>	kəveh <sup>e</sup>	guṇəyh <sup>i</sup>	bhanoh <sup>o</sup>	gəvh <sup>u</sup>
--------------------	--------------------	--------------------	--------------------	--------------------	---------------------	---------------------	-------------------

1. 'emission of breath'



Reading examples<sup>1</sup>

कः छः ठः भः ऐः ओः ऊः ऋः नौः षः  
 गुणः धृतिः बाहुः नितेः नृपैः विदुः शृणिः पुरुषः  
 मनःसु हविःपु धेनुभिः विशेषतः अंशतः अतःकरणम्  
 समदुःखसुखः शुनःशेषः जगतोहिताः मतोऽधिकः तेजोऽशः  
 बहवोऽबुवेगाः योगमायासमावृतः गंगातरंगहिमशीकरशीतलानि  
 जयदेवपंडितकवेः । पंडितानां समाजेऽपंडिता मौनं भजेयुः ।

भूय एव महाबाहो शृणु मे परमं वचः ।<sup>2</sup>

सुखं दुःखं भवोऽभावो भयं चाभयमेव च ॥<sup>3</sup>

वहसि वपुषि विशदे वसनं जलदामं हलहतिभीतिमिलितयमुनाभम् ।

केशव धृतहलधररूप जय जगदीश हरे ॥<sup>4</sup>

पाधविकापरिमलललित नवमालतिजातिसुगंधौ ।

मुनिमनसामपि मोहनकारिणी तरुणीकारिणबंधौ ॥<sup>5</sup>

4. The Complete Syllabary

The complete syllabary, arranged in the traditional order, is given on the following page. The characters are further arranged in a table in which the vowel characters, and the two modifiers added to the character अ, are placed in order at the head of a series of columns consisting of every consonant character in the akara form, each consonant character with each of the vowel signs and each of the modifiers.<sup>6</sup> These two tables together show the order in which the characters are placed as initial characters of words in dictionaries. Characters with the anusvareh are, however, placed before characters without the anusvareh but followed by another consonant character.

1. For transcription, see p.52.

2. Bhagavadgītā, ch.10, v.1.a.

3. ibid., ch.10, v.4.b.

4. Gitagovindakāvya, sarga 1, v.8.

5. ibid., sarga 1.3, v.7.

6. Cf. the series of characters with

vowel signs given above under 2.ii.

अ आ इ ई उ ऊ  
 ऋ ॠ लृ लृ  
 ए ऐ ओ औ  
 अं अः

क ख ग घ ङ  
 च छ ज झ ञ  
 ट ठ ड ढ ण  
 त थ द ध न  
 प फ ब भ म  
 य र ल व  
 श ष स ह  
 ॐ

### 5. The Devanagari Numerals

Hindi forms:	१	२	३	४	५	६	७	८	९	१०
	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	10
Bombay forms:	१	२	३	४	५	६	७	८	९	१०
	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	10

### 6. Punctuation

In prose writing, the end of a sentence is marked with a vertical stroke of the same height as the characters. In verse, the first line of a stanza or couplet is closed with one vertical stroke, and the complete stanza or couplet is closed with two vertical strokes and numbered as illustrated in the verse examples given at the end of the next chapter.

## CHAPTER 3

### CONJUNCT CHARACTERS

Consonant characters may be combined to represent two or more consonants realised without any intervening vowel. A character formed by combining other characters is called a conjunct character, संयुक्ताक्षरम् (samyuktakṣeram).

#### 1. Construction of Conjunct Characters.

Characters may be combined in various ways, according to the form of the characters to be joined.

- i. The second character may be subscribed to the first:

क क क्क	ङ्क क क्ङ्क	ट ट् टट्	द व द्द
k- kə kke	ŋ- kə ŋke	t- tə tte	d- və dde

- ii. If the first character has an upright stroke, this stroke may be omitted, and the first part of the first character is joined to the second character by the head-stroke, thus:

न् द न्द	ग् ग ग्ग	त् प त्प	न् म न्म
n- də ndə	g- gə gge	t- pə tpe	n- mə nme

The characters क्, ङ् and फ् are usually joined with following characters in the forms क्क, ङ्ङ and फ्फ.

Some conjunct characters may be formed by either of these two methods, for example:

च् च	च्च or च्च	ज् ज	ज्ज or ज्ज
c- cə	cce	j- jə	jje



Some conjunct characters are formed by a combination of methods

i. and ii.; for example:

द ध	दु	द भ	दु
d- dhə	ddhə	d-bhə	dbhə

iii. If the first character is a rounded character, with no upright stroke, it is usually written in full, and the second character is joined with it in a modified form, for example:

ट य	ट्य	द य	द्य	ह य	ह्य	ह म	ह्म
t- yə	tyə	d- yə	dyə	h- yə	hyə	h- mə	hme

iv. Some characters are written in a special form when joined with other characters, for example:

श व	श्व	र थ	र्य	ग र	ग्र	श र	श्र
ʃ- və	ʃve	r- the	rthe	g- rə	grə	ʃ- rə	ʃrə

The characters क् (Hindi form) and क्ष (Bombay form), representing k-ʃə , and the character ज्ञ , representing j-ɲə , have been included in the syllabic series from a very early date, though no conjunct characters are included in the syllabary. Calligraphically these three characters are not formed by joining two distinct characters, but they are considered in this work under the appropriate classes of conjunct characters because they represent syllables consisting of two consonants and the vowel ə .

If any characters are not modifiable, and therefore cannot be combined, by any of these methods, the realisation of them without an intervening vowel is indicated by writing the first character with the viraməh, thus

ट क	टक्	ड द	ड्ड	द ब्र	दब्
t- kə	tke	d- də	ddə	d- brə	dbre

Characters combined with other characters in this way do not form conjunct characters in calligraphy, but they are included in this chapter because they complete certain series in the classes of conjunct characters.

Three, four or five characters may be combined to form a conjunct character, for example:

त	म्	य	त्म्य	ब	ध	व	बध्व	र	ष	ट	य	ष्ट्य							
t	-	m	-	yə	tmyə	b	-	dh	-	və	bdhvə	r	-	ṣ	-	ṭ	-	yə	rṣṭyə

The general rules already given for the order of strokes in writing a character apply also to the conjunct characters. The vowel signs are added to the character before the headstroke is written.

Examples:

ktyu	क्	क्त्	क्त्थ	क्त्थु	क्त्थु
stvi	।	।स्	।स्त्व	स्त्व	स्त्व
rjyam	ज	ज्या	ज्या	ज्या	ज्या

## 2. Contexts of Conjunct Characters.

Conjunct characters occur in the following contexts:

### i. In words, such as

इच्छा	अग्निः	क्षिप्रः	ब्रह्मन्	श्लोकः	स्त्री
iccha	agnih	kṣiprēh	bṛhman	flokēh	strii

### ii. In junctions arising from grammatical processes:

#### a. In words formed by the addition of suffixes to verbal roots,

such as

भज्-त	भक्त	गम्-य	गम्य	लभ्-त्वा	लब्ध्वा
bhej-te	bhakte	gam-yə	gemyə	lēbh-tva	lēbdhva

b. In derivatives of various kinds, such as

दिव	दैव्यम्	शूर	शौर्यम्
diva	daivyaṃ	śuura	śauryaṃ

c. In words formed by the addition of prefixes or suffixes to other words, as in

उत्तम	उत्तम	उत्-गमः	उद्गमः	अभि-आसः	अभ्यासः
ut-tama	uttama	ut-gamaḥ	udgamaḥ	abhi-asaḥ	abhyasaḥ
दुर-गुण	दुर्गुण	वि-आधिः	व्याधिः	वाच-मय	वाङ्-मय
dur-guṇa	durguṇa	vi-adhiḥ	vyadhiḥ	vac-maya	vaṅmaya

iii. In compound words, in which the final character of one part of the compound word, if it is a *halante* character, is joined with the initial character of the following part, as in

षट् - मासः	षण्मासः	ऋच्-वेदः	ऋग्वेदः
ṣaṭ - masaḥ	ṣaṇmasaḥ	rc - vedah	rgvedaḥ
श्रीमत् भगवत् गीता		श्रीमद्भगवद्गीता	
śrīmat - bhagevat - giita		śrīmadbhagevedgiita	

iv. In pieces consisting of two or more words, in which a conjunct character is written joining the final character of one word, if it is a *halante* character, with the initial character of the following word. For example:

श्रेयो हि ज्ञानमभ्यासाज्ज्ञानाद्ध्यानं	विशिष्यते
śreyo hi jñanamabhyasajjñanaddhyanam	viśiṣyate,
ध्यानात्कर्मफलत्यागस्त्यागाच्छान्तिरनन्तरम् ॥ १२ ॥	
dhyanaatkarmaphalatyagastyagacchāntirānāntaram. 12. 1	



The process of joining characters illustrated in ii. to v. above is known as 'sandhi' of consonants<sup>1</sup>. The examples in ii.a. and ii.b. illustrate the process of 'internal' sandhi, and those in ii.c., iii. and iv. illustrate that of 'external' sandhi.

### 3. Classification of Conjunct Characters.

The conjunct characters are arranged in this work in classes according to the combination of consonants which occurs when the conjunct character is realised in reading. The conjunct characters, when arranged in this way, fall into four classes.

Class 1. Two similar characters joined.

Class 2. Two *vergiiye* characters joined.

Class 3. Characters joined with *əntəhs*the characters in various combinations:

- i. Characters joined with य
- ii. Characters joined with व
- iii. Characters joined with
  - a. preceding र् ; or b. following र
- iv. Characters joined with
  - a. preceding ल्<sup>2</sup> ; or b. following ल

Class 4. *vergiiye* characters joined with *uṣṣmen* characters:

- i. Characters joined with
  - a. preceding श्, ष् or स् ; or b. following श, ष or स
- ii. Characters joined with
  - a. preceding ह् ; or b. following ह

---

1. Compare reference to 'sandhi' of vowels, in Chapter 2, 2.i.  
 2. The Vedic character ऌ, [ə], is included in this class.

Class 1. Two similar characters joined<sup>1</sup>.

क्क	क्ख	गग	गघ	ङु	ञ्च	चछ	ज्ज	ज्झ	--
-kka	-kkha	-gga	-ggha	-ṅṅa <sup>2</sup>	-cca	-ccha	-jja	-jjha	--
ट्ट	ट्ठ	डु	डढ	ण्ण	त्त	त्थ	दद	दध	नन
-tta	-ttha	-ḍḍa	-ḍḍha	-ṇṇa	-tta	-ttha	-dda	-ddha	-nna
प्प	प्फ	बब	बभ	म्म					
-ppa	-ppha	-bba	-bbha	-mma					
य्य		ल्ल	व्व		श्श	ष्ष	स्स		--
-yya	--	-lla	-vva <sup>3</sup>		-śśa	-ṣṣa	-ssa	--	
Alternative forms		चच	ज्ज	ज्झ	ण्ण	ल्ल			
		-cca	-jja	-jjha	-ṇṇa	-lla			

The characters ज, र and ह do not occur in this series. The second and fourth characters in each varṅga are formed by combining the alpa-praṇa characters with the corresponding mahapraṇa characters.

Reading examples<sup>4</sup>.

ठक्कुरः कक्खट्ट दृग्गोचरः वाग्धि तिङ्गुतिङ् उच्चैः इच्छा  
 रज्जुः उज्झति पट्टिका लट्ट उड्डीन षड्ढा विषण्ण विषण्ण  
 उत्तम उत्थित उद्देशः बुद्धिः मित्र पिप्पलः फुप्फूस अब्बुः  
 अब्भोगः सम्मतिः संमोहः शय्या उल्लेखः तच्छृणु सन्नद्ध  
 दुश्शील [दुःशील] शतायुष्णु [शतायुःषु] जस्सरजः शुभाँल्लोकान्

1. Conjunct characters which do not occur initially are indicated by prefixing a hyphen in the roman transcription.
2. This character occurs only in the grammatical term given in the reading examples.
3. This character occurs only in combination with preceding र्.
4. Transcription of examples is given on p.52.

Class 2. Two vergilya characters joined.<sup>1</sup>

1. əghoṣe and ghōṣavat characters, excluding ənunasika characters:

vergeh	əghoṣe				ghōṣavat			
क - च kə - cə	क्च	--	क्छ	--	ग्ज	--	ग्भ	--
	-kcə	--	-kchə	--	-gje	--	-gjhe	--
क - ट kə - tə	क्ट	टक्	कठ	टख	ग्ड	ङ्ग	ग्ढ	ड्य
	-ktə	-tke	-kthə	-tkhə	-gdə	-dga	-gdhe	-dghə
क - त kə - tə	क्त	त्क	कथ	तख	ग्द	ङ्ग	ग्ध	ड्य
	-kte	-tke	-kthə	-tkhə	-gde	-dga	-gdhe	-dghə
क - प kə - pə	क्प	प्क	क्फ	प्रख	ग्ब	ब्ग	ग्भ	व्य
	-kpə	-pke	-kphə	-pkhə	-gbe	-bga	-gbhe	-bghe
च - ट cə - tə	--	ट्च	--	टछ	--	ड्ज	--	ड्भ
	--	-tce	--	-tche	--	-dje	--	-djhe
च - प cə - pə	--	प्च	--	प्छ	--	ब्ज	--	ब्भ
	--	-pce	--	-pche	--	-bje	--	-bjhe
ट - त tə - tə	टत्	त्ट	टथ	तठ	ड्द	दड	ड्ध	दठ
	-tte <sup>2</sup>	-tte	-tthə	-tthe	-dda	-dda	-ddhe	-ddhe
ट - प tə - pə	ट्प	प्ट	टफ	पठ	ड्ब	ब्ड	ड्भ	बठ
	-tpe	-pte	-tphe	-pthə	-dbe	-bde	-dbhe	-bdhe
त् - प tə - pə	त्प	प्	त्फ	प्य	ड्ब	ब्द	ड्भ	व्य
	-tpe	-pte	-tphe	-pthə	-dbe	-bde	-dbhe	-bdhe

1. Many of these conjunct characters occur only in external sandhi.
2. This combination occurs in the character combining ट्, त् and र .



11. Characters of each vergeh joined with a preceding or following anunasika character of the same vergeh.

a. anunasika character preceding.

कै	क्खै	क़ै	क्क़ै	अ	अअ	अ	अअ
-ṅke	-ṅkhe	-ṅge	-ṅghe	-pce	-pche	-pje	-pjehe
एट	एठ	एड	एढ	न्त	न्थ	न्द	न्ध
-ṅte	-ṅthe	-ṅde	-ṅdhe	-nte	-nthē	-nde	-ndhe
म्प	म्फ	म्ब	म्भ				
-mpe	-mphe	-mbe	-mbhe				

Alternative forms

अअ	एट	एठ	एड	एढ
-ṅjhe	-ṅte	-ṅthe	-ṅde	-ṅdhe

These characters, representing a preceding homorganic nasal consonant, are usually written in preference to the anusvareh placed on the preceding character, of which examples have been given above<sup>1</sup>. The following examples illustrate the contexts in which the anusvareh may be written, and in which it is not written:

पतन्ति	विनन्ति:	विनन्ति:	लभन्ते	अन्ते	अन्ते
patanti <sup>2</sup>	vinantih or vinantih <sup>3</sup>		labhante <sup>2</sup>	ante or ante <sup>3</sup>	

b. anunasika character following.

अ	इ	उ	व	ल	श	रु	झ	प्प	भ्भ
-cpe	jpe	-[h]pe	-dhpē	-tne	-thne	-dne <sup>4</sup>	-dhne	-ppe	-bhne

The character इ is not calligraphically a conjunct character, and is found, from an early date, included in the syllabic series of characters<sup>5</sup>. In realisation, however, it belongs to this class of

1. See above, Ch.2,3.1.b.

2. Verbal forms.

3. Non-verbal forms.

4. The combination द् - न more usually becomes न्न in sandhi.

5. See above, Ch.2,1.iii.

conjunct characters. In the order of words in dictionaries, words beginning with **ज्ञ** are placed between words beginning with **जो** and those beginning with **ज्य**.

iii. Characters joined with a preceding or following *anunasika* character of a different *vargeh*:

a. *anunasika* character preceding.

इ-	इभ	न्	न्क	न्ग	न्च	न्ज	न्फ	न्भ
-ṛbha		-n-	-nke	-nge	-nce <sup>1</sup>	-nje <sup>1</sup>	-nphe	-nbhe

Most characters may occur joined with preceding **न्**, on account of the frequent occurrence of formative particles ending in **न्**.

**इ**, **ण**, also may occur with many characters in external sandhi.

b. *anunasika* character following.

-ण	क्ण	गण	भण				
-ṇa	-kṇa	-gaṇa	-bhṇa				
-न	क्न	ख्न	ग्न	घ्न	प्न	ब्र	भ्र
-na	kne	-khne	gne	ghne	-pne	-bne	-bhne
-म	कम	खम	गम	घम	चम	जम	डम
-ma	-kma	-khma	-gma	-ghma	-cma	-jma	-ḍma
	त्म	द्व	ध्म				
	-tma	-dva	-dhma				

iv. Two *anunasika* characters of different *vargeh*.

इन्	इम्	एन्	एम्	न्म	म्ण	म्न
-ṇne	-ṇme	-ṇne	-ṇme	-nme	-mṇe	mne

Alternative forms of the conjunct characters in iii. and iv. are formed with **ण**, e.g. **गण** -gaṇa **भण** -bhṇa **म्ण** -mṇa **उम्** -uṃ.

1. It is more usual to write **ञ्** before characters of the *ca-vargeh*.



Reading examples<sup>1</sup>

1. वाक्चल वाक्छलम् पृथग्जनः वाग्भटिति वाक्टीका षट्कोण  
 षट्खेटकम् वाग्धम्बरः स्वङ्गः -वाग्दौकते- -द्विद्घोरा- भक्तिः उत्कट  
 उक्थम् उत्स्वात हृद्रत सद्गुण दग्ध उद्घाटकः वाक्पटु  
 वाक्फलम् -ककुप्स्वातु- पृथग्भावः ककुब्गुरुः ककुब्धोरा षट्चरणः  
 षट्छविः षड्जः -षड्भटिति- अप्चरः ककुप्छविः कुब्ज -ककुब्भटिति-  
 षड्देवाः षड्धा षट्पटि दुप्टीका षट्फण षड्बाहु ककुप्ठक्कुरः  
 अब्दिम्भ षड्भाग ककुब्दौकते उत्पन्न सत्फलः गुप्त उद्बोधक उद्भवः  
 शब्दः लब्ध भगवद्गीता संयुक्त अद्भुत मद्भक्त बुद्धियुक्त सच्छब्दः

11. a. अङ्गः शङ्खः लिङ्गम् सङ्गः सञ्जयः वाञ्छा अञ्जीरः भञ्ज्मा  
 घुण्टः कण्ठः परिहितः दुण्ठिः अन्तः पन्थक सुन्दर इन्धः  
 कम्पन गुम्फति सम्बन्धः आरम्भः पङ्क्तिः अरुन्द्धा

b. याज्ञा ज्ञानम् हेङ्गाति हेङ्गाति रत्नम् मग्ना बुग्नाति पाप्मन्  
 तज्ज्ञेय सज्ज्ञा संज्ञा विशेषज्ञ जिज्ञासु

111. a. उदङ्भिः महान्कविः दन्फुः दन्भुः

b. ऋक्ण रुग्ण गृग्णाति शक्नोति चरन्तुतुः अग्निः विघ्न  
 मृद्नाति आप्नोति अग्नाभः रुक्मिणी वाग्मिन् वच्मिः अज्मः कुङ्गल  
 आत्मन् पद्मा ध्मात दम्भस् दध्मौ

iv. दिङ्नागः वाङ्मय द्विप्नालः<sup>2</sup> परमासः जन्मन् स्मृणाति स्नात

1. For transcription of examples, see p.52. Examples illustrating characters which could occur in sandhi arising from the sequence of words in a sentence are placed between hyphens.  
 2. The first character represents dvi . See Class 3.11.



Class 3. Characters joined with antehsthe characters.

1. Characters joined with following य .

क्य	ख्य	ग्य	घ्य	ङ्य	च्य	छ्य	ज्य	भ्य	--
kye	khye	gye	ghye	-gye	cyē	-chye	jye	-jhye	--

ट्य	ठ्य	ड्य	ढ्य	ण्य	त्य	थ्य	द्य	ध्य	न्य
-tye	-ṭhye	-ḍye	-ḍhye	ṇye	tye	thye	dye	dhye	nyē

प्य	फ्य	ब्य	भ्य	म्य
pye	-phyē	bye	bhye	mye

य्य	र्य	ल्य	व्य	भ्य	प्य	स्य	ह्य
(yye) <sup>1</sup>	-rye <sup>2</sup>	lye	vye	jye	-sye	syē	hye

Examples of conjunct characters of Classes 1. and 2. with 3.1.

न्य	त्त्य	त्म्य	प्त्य	ग्ध्य	द्भ्य	ब्ज्य
-nnye	-tṭye	-tmye	-ptye	-gdhye	-dbhye	-bjye

Reading examples.<sup>3</sup>

वाक्यम् रव्यात वैराग्यम् श्लाघ्य<sup>4</sup> उदङ्यशः च्युत वाञ्छ्य ज्योतिस्  
उज्भयति कापट्यम् शाठ्यम् जाड्यम् अवाढ्य पुण्यम् त्याज्य  
पथ्य विद्या ध्यानम् कन्या आप्य रिप्यते अब्योनिः अभ्यासः  
सौम्यम् धैर्यम् अमूल्य व्यूढ दृश्य मनुष्यः रहस्य ह्यस् सैन्यस्य  
सन्धासः संन्यासः चिन्त्य बुद्ध्या तज्ज्योतिस् वैदग्ध्यम् माहात्म्यम्  
भक्त्या कौब्ज्यम् सुहृद्भ्यः भगवन्व्यक्तिः -- एवमेतद्यथाऽऽत्थ--  
--गुह्यमध्यात्मसंज्ञितम्-- । अङ्गः सुखमाराध्यः सुखतरमाराध्यते विशेषज्ञः<sup>5</sup>

1. See under Class 1. 2. The superscribed stroke in this character represents r preceding another consonant. 3. For transcription see p. 53. 4. The first character represents jla . See below under iv.b. 5. Nītisātakam, verse 3.a.

ii. Characters with following व .

क्व	ख्व	ग्व	घ्व	ङ्व	च्व	छ्व	ज्व	भ्व	
kvə	khvə	gvə	ghvə	-ŋvə	-cvə	-chvə	jvə	jhvə	--
ट्व	ठ्व	ड्व	ढ्व	एव	त्व	थ्व	द्व	ध्व	न्व
-ṭvə	-ṭhvə	-ḍvə	-ḍhvə	-ṇvə	tve	-thvə	dve	dhvə	nve
प्व	--	ब्व	भ्व	म्व					
-pvə	--	-bvə	-bhvə	-mvə					
य्व	र्व	ल्व			भ्व	ष्व	स्व	ह्व	
yve	-rvə <sup>1</sup>	lvə	(-vvə) <sup>2</sup>		ṣve <sup>3</sup>	ṣvə	svə	hvə	

ज and फ do not occur in this series. व preceding another character occurs in वण , -vṇə, व्र , -vṇə, व्र , vṛə<sup>4</sup> and वृ , vṛə<sup>5</sup>.  
Examples of conjunct characters of Classes 1. and 2. with 3.i. and ii.

त्त्व	र्व	च्छ्व	त्त्व	द्वय	बध्व	ग्ध्व
-ttvə	-rvvə	-cchvə	-ktvə	-dvya	-bdhvə	-gdhva

Reading examples.<sup>6</sup>

क्वचित् पक्वान्नम् आरवोः ऋग्वेदः लध्वी उच्छ्वासः उज्ज्वल उज्भव  
लट्ठः यद्वत्वा षड्विध दद्वम् शृग्वन् त्वरित पृथ्वी उद्विग्न ध्वनिः  
अन्वित आप्वा अग्वाहनम् रिभ्वन् चम्बोः प्यागुली सर्व सवर्ष नत्वः  
ईश्वरः विश्व ष्वककते अनुस्वारः हे विह्वल विध्वंसः द्वन्द्वः तत्त्वम्  
दुग्ध्वा लब्ध्वा उस्त्वा दाग्न एतद्व्वा विनाति ग्राव्णा<sup>7</sup> प्राड्वशः<sup>7</sup>  
त्यक्त्वाऽऽत्मशुद्धये । ---पुण्यकृताँल्लोकानुषित्वा शाश्वतीः समाः<sup>8</sup>

1. For the superscribed stroke in this character, see below, in iii.a.
2. See -vvə in Class 1.
3. For this form of ṣe see Ch.2,1.iii.
4. See below, under iii.b.
5. See below, under iv.b.
6. For transcription of examples, see p.53.
7. The initial characters in these words represent grə and prə.
8. From Bhagavadgītā, Ch.6,v.41.a.



iii. Characters joined with preceding र् or following र .

a. र् preceding another character.

To represent र् preceding another character a stroke is superscribed on the character before which r is to be realised. This stroke is called रेफः, rephəh, the name given to the character र .<sup>1</sup> rephəh in this form may be written with any character, but it does not occur with ज or स .

क	च	ट	त	प	य	श	ह
-rkə	-rcə	-rʈə	-rtə	-rpə	-ryə	-rʃə	-rhə

Some of the characters, particularly ग, च, ज, त, द, ध, ब, म, य and व, are frequently doubled when written with rephəh. This practice is found in Hindi writing, but is not usual in Marathi writing. Examples:

गर्ग	जर्ज	तर्त	दुर्द	म्मर्	य्यर्	वर्व
-rggə	-rjje	-rtte	-rddhə	-rmme	-ryye	-rvve

Characters written with vowel signs and rephəh:

कर्	किर्	कीर्	कुर्	केर्	कैर्	कोर्	कौर्
-rka	-rki	-rkii	-rku	-rke	-rkəy̐	-rko	-rkəv̐

and with rephəh and anusvareh:

कर्ं	किर्ं	कीर्ं	कुर्ं	केर्ं	कैर्ं	कोर्ं
-rkam̐	-rkim̐	-rkiiṃ	-rkum̐	-rkem̐	-rkəy̐ṃ	-rkəv̐ṃ

The rephəh is placed above the upright stroke of a character, or above the mid-point. It is always written to the right side of any other superscribed stroke, as shown in the examples given below. It is written also with the vowel character ऋ. as in the word निर्ऋतिः.

1. rephe, 'rough'; rephəh, 'a rough sound'.



Characters with repheh are written as shown in these examples:

rki	क	कि	किं	कि	rki	क	की	कीं	की
rke	क	के	के	के	rko	क	को	को	को
rkiṃ	कि	किं	किं	किं	rkeṃ	कौ	कौ	कौ	कौ

In Bombay writing the character representing -rhe is sometimes written as -ह, though the use of this stroke for repheh is more rarely used in writing Sanskrit than in writing Marathi.

b. र following another character.

To represent र following another character, a diagonal stroke is placed against the upright stroke of those characters that have one, or beneath the mid-point of the lower part of a rounded character.

क	--	ग्र	घ्र	ङ्र	--	झ्र	ज्र	--	--
kre	--	gre	-ghre	-ṅre	--	-chre <sup>2</sup>	jre	--	--
ट्र	--	ड्र	--	--	त्र	थ्र	द्र	ध्र	न्र
-tre <sup>3</sup>	--	-dre	--	--	tre	thre	dre	dhre	-nre
प्र	--	ब्र	भ्र	म्र	व्र	श्र	स्र	ह्र	ह्र
pre	--	bre	bhre	mre	vre	jre <sup>4</sup>	sre	hre	hre

Examples of conjunct characters of Classes 1. to 3.ii. with 3.iii.

क्त्र	त्प्र	त्य्र	द्र्य	ध्व्र	द्र्र	न्य्र	ध्न्य्र
-ktre	-tpre	-rtre	-drye	-rdhve	-rdre	-ntrye	-rdhnye

1. See above, Ch.2,2.ii. Vowel signs.

2. This combination occurs in the character joining च्छ and र.

3. ट्र and र are combined in the character representing ष, ट and र.

4. For this form of श, see Ch.2,1.iii.

Reading examples<sup>1</sup>

a. तर्कः मूर्खः वर्गः वर्गीयः दीर्घः शार्ङ्गः चर्चा मूर्च्छितः अर्जुनः निर्भरः  
 वातर्धम् वर्यः कर्तुं व्यर्थं दुर्दैवम् अर्धं मनुर्नाम अर्पणम् दुर्बलं गर्भितं  
 ऊर्मिः कर्मन् धार्मिकं पर्यन्तं पर्यंतं सूर्यः दुर्लभः पूर्वः सर्व्वं दर्शनम्  
 हर्षः अर्हत् कीर्तिः अर्हनिशम् ऊर्ध्वम् वर्ज्यं मूर्ध्नि मूर्ध्न्याधायात्मनः नैऋती  
 दुर्बुद्धैर्युद्धः । श्वेतैर्हयैर्युक्ते । वेदयज्ञाध्यायनैर्न दानैर्न च ---

b. विक्रमः आयहः शीघ्रः प्राङ्गत्री कृच्छ्रः वज्रम् पौंड्रः शत्रुः द्रव्यम्  
 श्रुयः प्रयत्नः प्रेम्णा ब्रुवः भ्रातृ नम्रः व्रजः शुश्रूषा सज्वा ह्रस्वः ह्रस्वः  
 हे हिंस्रः श्राद्धः आर्द्रः आर्द्रः दारिद्र्यम् दारिद्र्यम् संह्रीणः एतच्छ्रुत्वा  
 विग्नतम् षट्त्रिंशः यत्प्रमाणम् जम्बूद्वीपे

iv. Characters combined with preceding ल् or following ल .<sup>2</sup>a. ल् preceding another character.<sup>3</sup>

ल्क	ल्ग	ल्प	ल्फ	ल्ब	ल्भ	ल्म
-lka	-lge	-lps	-lpha	-lba	-lbha	-lma
ल्श	ल्स	ल्ह		Vedic	ळह	
-lś	-lse	-lha			-lha	

## b. ल following another character.

क्ल	ग्ल	छ्ल	इल	प्ल	ब्ल	भ्ल
kla	gle	-chla	-qla	pla	bha	bhla
म्ल	व्ल	श्ल or श्ल	ह्ल			
mla	vla	śla	hla			

Most of these characters may be written either by method 1. or by method 11., described earlier in this chapter.<sup>4</sup>

1. For transcription, see p. 53.

2. For ल joined with antehatha characters, see i. to iii. above.

3. Vedic ळ is included in this class.

4. See above, 1. Construction of Conjoint Characters.



Examples of conjunct characters of Classes 1. to 3.iii. with 3.iv.

त्प	त्क	च्छ	ल्भ्य
-tp̄e	-tk̄e	-cch̄e	-lb̄hye

Reading examples.<sup>1</sup>

उल्का फल्गु स्वल्प अल्पप्राण गुल्फित उल्ब प्रगल्भ  
 हल्शब्दः हल्सन्धिः बल्ह् प्रागल्भ्यम् जळहु मिळहुषे  
 क्लेशः ग्लौ प्लव पिप्लुः अब्लिंग ककुभ्तामः म्लेच्छः विनाति  
 श्लोकः श्लेषः सिहः हादते उच्छुख उत्क्लेशः उत्प्लव  
 परेषां चेतांसि प्रतिदिवसमाराध्य बहु हा  
 प्रसादं किं नेतुं विशसि हृदय क्लेशकलिलम् ।  
 प्रसन्ने त्वय्यन्तः स्वयमुदितचिन्तामणिगुणे

विमुक्तः सङ्कल्पः किमभिलषितं पुष्यति न ते ॥६२॥<sup>2</sup>

Class 4. vargiye characters joined with preceding or following  
uugmen characters.

1. Characters joined with श, ष or स .

a. श्, ष् or स् preceding another character.

The following characters occur in this series, some occurring only in external sandhi.

श <sup>3</sup> ʃ-	श्क	श्च	श्छ	श्भ	श्म				
	-ʃkə	-ʃcə	-ʃchə	ʃnə	-ʃpə	ʃmə			
ष ʃ-	ष्क	ष्ठ	ष्ठ	ष्ण	ष्प	ष्फ	ष्म		
	-ʃkə	-ʃtə	ʃthə	-ʃnə	-ʃpə	-ʃphə	-ʃmə		
स् s-	स्क	स्व	स्ज	स्त	स्थ	स्र	स्फ	स्म	
	skə	skhə	-sʃə	stə	sthə	snə	spə	sphe	smə

1. For transcription, see p.54.

2. Vairāgyasātakam, v.62.

3. These characters may be written with either श् or श्.



b. श , ष or स following another character.

The following characters occur in this series, some occurring only in external sandhi.

श ʃə	कश -kʃə	ङ्श -ŋʃə	ज्श -tʃə	ट्श -ʈʃə	न्श -nʃə	प्श -pʃə
ष ʂə	क्ष or क्ष <sup>1</sup> kʂə	इष् <sup>2</sup> -ɪʂə	ट्ष -ʈʂə	न्ष -nʂə	प्ष -pʂə	
स sə	क्स -ksə	ट्स -ʈsə	एस -ɛsə	त्स -ʈsə	न्स -nsə	प्स -psə

The character क्ष has been included in the syllabic series from an early date, and is not calligraphically a conjunct character.<sup>3</sup> In the order of words in dictionaries, words beginning with क्ष are placed after words beginning with क्.

Conjunct characters of Classes 1. - 3. with Class 4.

स्त्र stra	ष्ट्र -ʃtra	ष्ठ्र -ʃʈva	क्ष्ण kʂɳə	क्ष्म -kʂmə	स्त्व -stva	त्स्थ -tstha	त्सन् -tsana
स्य stryə	स्य -samyə	स्य -samyə	स्य -samyə	स्य -samyə	स्य -samyə	स्य -samyə	स्य -samyə

Calligraphy: kʂə , Bombay form - क्ष क्ष क्ष क्ष

Reading examples<sup>4</sup>

- a. आश्चर्यम् प्रश्नः श्मश्रु पुष्कल बृष्कम् सृष्टिः कृष्ण ज्येष्ठ वृष्ट  
पुष्पम् निष्फल ऊष्मन् श्लेष्मा संस्कृत स्खलित भ्रस्ज् स्तब्ध स्थितिः स्त्री  
अन्तःस्थ लिग्ध स्पृष्ट स्फूर्तिः भस्म श्रेष्ठत्वम् श्वसुत दृष्ट्वा दंष्ट्रा वाष्णीय नमस्तेऽस्तु
- b. प्राक्शिरस् प्रत्यङ्शिरस् ताज्जुका [तान्जुका] षट्शास्त्र रप्शते अक्षरम् अक्षरम्  
तिर्यङ्शु षट्षष्टिः क्षेत्रज्ञ दिक्सम लिट्सु वत्सः सुगणसरति [सुगण्टसरति] क्षमा

1. Bombay form.

2. This combination usually becomes इक्ष .

3. Cf. note on क्ष , Cl. 2.11.b.

4. For transcription, see p. 54.





Transcription of Reading ExamplesChapter 2.

1.1.    de    dhe    te    phe    me    pe    ne    ce    de    ge  
          ko    bha    je    bo    ghe    oha    the    kha    jhe    na

bheja    pede    dhene    keje    mehe    phehe    ghene    khac    dedh    dama  
 chad    jhage    jade    pheje    patha    bate    chage    pedh    gheje    gona

gemeke    jeget    cenaka    methene    ghejeke    peheke    demethe  
 dhajeka    kepeje    bhejeke    gonaka    ketham    khajeke    pedaka

chadenam    panenam    netenem    kethanam    bhananam    jenapede  
 gomenam    pethanam    dhenemede    jhenejhanam    jhanejhanam

1.11.    va    ya    ra    la    ba    the    khe    te

lava    jala    khara    ved    jhara    bele    vere    rana    veth  
 lebh    yeva    dhara    laye    jhara    ret    rana    phal    rathe

tarala    lavana    bheyam    dhevele    jethera    cerana    demera  
 nekhere    legeje    capele    bhavet    nayana    vecere    latabhe

yamavat    voyanam    gerelam    pedakemela    kepejevachenam

1.111.    sa    ha    se    ja    pa    de    ra    kha

sara    saha    set    vasa    has    jhesa    resa    vas    seva  
 set    sethe    kaja    keje    ses    heyse    here    jhesa    bhesa

sarala    kalese    jehet    veyes    sepetha    semeye    bahale    selabha  
 yefes    serete    saphela    sarasa    harake    parase    rebhase    heteke

deferatha    faketem    seveyes    kelahem    jasanam    fetesas  
 jaleceres    navadesakem    sahegomanam    kamalevedene    desefetem

2.1.    e    i    u    e    r    ii    uu    o    ey    l    a    ev    rr

ethe    is    ut    eke    ine    ot    ed    eyje    rdh  
 uuh    edhe    iife    uche    evm    rna    uudha    ihe    us  
 ed    ol    evm    okh    rc    oyna    udeh    rnem  
 ifset    uuhenam    rjabha    evsedhem    eysemes    upakerenem

2.11.    nii    bhui    goy    ar    da    ji    gev    poy    me    duu  
          kr    chi    nev    hey    bhii    frr    fii    dr    hi    hr

duure    bhiite    rama    cora    tin    dose    jrts    dhrt    ruudha  
 goyre    krj    pevla    klp    drdhe    pure    phehe    mevle    krtr  
 pitr    meru    duugi    bhiiti    hrdr    guru    vrtha    jifu    setu  
 otu    iiti    etav    rtu    iti    uuru    rpi    enii    iile



bhuuṣiṭe viṣeṣe upaye vāybhavē pitrān pāvruṣe ruciṛe bhāṁmike  
kumarii jhātīti thalīni ruuṣiṭe āṣṣādhī kēṣkeyīi jhīrika  
vidhatru āṣṁhike dhalin surebhi khēḍika helāte

ekakin hr̥ṣīkeṣa itihāsa kāvśeḷeṣa viṣuucika pāvraṇika  
devenagerīi anunasike āṣṇaṣṣāde upajīivika āṣṇaḍeṣike  
upeniveṣike āṣṇanayike ko-pi rte-pi yaśo-pāyēṣe

3.i. kiṁ maṁ sukhēṁ harim mrtēṁ tenum aham evam r̥ṣiṇam  
dīṁbā paṁḍu lāṁgām dhumdhi jṛmbh jhāmjha kiṁcit kēṁṁteya  
samyamēnā samjvet māṁsā samjyu samjruudhē samliṇā aṁhātī

tamēṁ hrdī samgatamenīṣam bhr̥ṣam remayami  
kiṁ vene-nusarami tamiḥ kiṁ vr̥tha vilāpami

3.ii. kēḥ chēḥ thēḥ jhēḥ āṣṁ oh uuh rh nēḥ ṣēḥ  
guṇṣḥ dhrtih bahuh niteḥ nr̥pāṣṁ viduh jṛṇih puruṣēḥ  
mānēḥsu hiviḥsu dhenubhih viṣeṣātēḥ aṁṣātēḥ aṁtēḥkērēṁ  
sāmēdukhkēsukhēḥ ṣunēḥṣepēḥ jēgētohitāḥ mēto-dhikēḥ tejom-ṣēḥ  
bhāvom-buvegah yogamāyāsamavrtēḥ gamgatēṁgēhimeṣīikereṣīitēlani  
jēyēdevēpāṁḍitēkēvēḥ pāṁḍitanam samaje-pāṁḍita mēṁnēḥ bhājeyuh

bhuyē eva māhabaho jṛṇu me pāramam vēcēḥ

sukhēṁ dukhēṁ bhavo-bhavo bhāyēṁ cabhāyāmēvā cā

vēḥasi vepuṣi viṣḍe vāsenam jēlādabham hēlētibhiitimilitēyēmunabham  
kēṣēvā dhrtēhēlādherēruupe jēyē jēgēdiṣe hēre

madhēvikapērimēlēlēlīte nēvēmālētījātisugāṁdhēṣ  
munimēnāsamēpi mōhēnekariṇīi tēruṇīikariṇēbēṁdhēṣ

### Chapter 3.

#### Class 1.

thēkkurēḥ kēkkhātē dṛggocērēḥ vagghi tinṇetīṁ ucceṣṁ iccā  
rējjuh ujjhātī pēṭṭika lēṭṭhē uddīnē ṣēḍḍhā viṣēṇṇē viṣēṇṇē  
uttāmē utthitē uddeṣēḥ buddhih bhinnē pippelēḥ phupphuusēḥ ābbuh  
ābbhogēḥ sammētīḥ sammōhēḥ jēyya ullekheḥ tēcchr̥ṇu sēṇḍḍhē  
duṣṣīlē (duhṣīlē) jētayusṣu (jētayuhfu) jēsserājēḥ ṣubhamllokan

#### Class 2.

1. vakcālē vakchēlēm prthēgjenēḥ vagjhātīti vaktīika ṣēṭkōṇē  
ṣēṭkhetākēm vagḍēmbarēḥ khēḍgēḥ vagdhēṣṣkēte dvidghora bhaktih utkētē  
ukthēm utkhātē hrdgātē ṣēḍguṇē dēḍdhē udghātēkē vakpētū  
vakphēlēm kēkupkhalu prthēgbhavēḥ kēkubguruh kēkubghora ṣēṭcērēṇēḥ  
ṣēṭcheviḥ ṣēḍjēḥ ṣēḍjhātīti āpcērēḥ kēkupcheviḥ kubjē kēkubjhātīti  
ṣēḍdevah ṣēḍḍhā ṣēṭpeti tuptīika ṣēṭphēṇē ṣēḍbahu kēkupthēkkurēḥ  
ēḍḍimbhē ṣēḍbhagē kēkubdhēṣṣkēte utpēnnē ṣēṭphēlēḥ gupte udbodhēkē  
jēḍḍēḥ lēḍdhē bhēgēvedgiṭa samyuktē ādbhūtē mēdbhaktē buddhi-  
yuktē sēcchēḍḍēḥ

ii.a. ənkeh sənkəh lingem səngəh səpəyəh vapcha ənjiirəh jhənjha  
ghunṭəh kənṭəh pənṭitəh dhuṇḍhih əntəh pənṭəke sundərə indhəh  
kəmpənə gumphəti səmbəndhəh arəmbhəh pənṭtiḥ ərunddha

b. yacna jnanəm heṭhṇati heḍhṇati retnəm methna budhṇati papmen  
təjneye sənṇa sənṇa vifəsəjṇe jijṇasu

iii.a. udəṇbhīh mēhankeviḥ drunphuh drunbhuh

b. rkṇe rugṇe grbhṇati fəknōti cəkhnutuh agniḥ vighṇe  
mrḍṇati apnoti əbnabhəh rukmiṇii vagmin vəcmiḥ əjməḥ kuḍməle  
atmən pədma dhmatə drbhṇməs dədhməṣ

iv. diṇṇagəh vaṇṇmēye dvīṇṇaləḥ ṣeṇṇmasəḥ jēnṇmən rēṇṇati mnatə

### Class 3.

i. vəkṇem khyatə vəṇragyem ṣlaghye udəṇyəsəḥ cyutə vapchye jyotis  
ujjhyeti kapeṭyem ṣaṭhyem jadyam əvadhye purṇyem tyajye  
pethye vidya dhyanəm kenya apye riphyyetə əbyonih əbhyasəḥ  
səṣṇyem dheṇryem əmuulye vyyudḥe drṣye menuṣyeh rēḥsyə hyəs  
səṇnyasəḥ sēṇnyasəḥ cintye buddhya təjjyotis vəḍḍegdhym mahatmyem  
bhəktya kəṣṇbjyem səhrdbhyeh bhəgevenvyektih evəmetədyətha--tṭhə  
guhyemədhyaṭmēsəṇṇpitəm əjṇəḥ sukhəmaradhyeh sukhətərəmaradhyetə  
vifəsəjṇəḥ

ii. kvəcit pəkṇvannəm akhvoh rgvedeh ləghvii ucchvasəḥ ujjvələ ujjhvə  
ləṭvəḥ yədnetva ṣəḍvidhə drḍhvəm ṣrṇven tṇvritə prṭhvii udvignə  
dhvənih  
ənvitə apva əbvahənəm ribhvən cəmvoh yvagulii sərve sərṇvə nəlṇəḥ  
iifvərəḥ viṣve ṣvėkkətə ənusvərəḥ hve vihvələ vidhvəṇsəḥ dvəndvəḥ  
təttvəm  
dugdhva ləbdhva uktva dāvna etəddhva vlinati gravṇa prāṇvəḥ  
tyəktva--tməṣuddhye purṇyektamṣṭlokanuṣitva ṣaṣvetiḥ semah

iii.a. tərkeh muurkəḥ vėgəḥ vėrgiye diirgə ṣarṇgə cərca muurchitə  
arṇunəḥ nirjherəḥ  
dardhyem vərṇəḥ kərtr vyərthə durḍəṇvəm ərdhə mənurnamə ərpəṇəm dur-  
bələ gərbhitə  
uurmih kərmmən dharmikə peryəntə peryəṇṭe suuryeh ḍurlēbhə puurve  
sərṇvə dərṣənəm  
hərṣəḥ ərhət kiirtih əhərnifəm uurdhvəm vərjye muurdhni muurdhnyā-  
dhayətmənəḥ nəṇrṇrtii  
durbuddhəṇryuddhə ṣvətəṇrḥeyəṇryukte vədəyējṇadhyayəṇəṇrṇə  
dāṇəṇrṇə cə

b. vikrēməḥ agrehəḥ ṣiighrə prāṇratrīi krēcchrə vėjṇəm pəṇḍrəḥ  
ṣətruh drevyem  
dhruvə prəyətṇəḥ prēmṇa bruvə bhratr nēmṇə vrējəḥ ṣuṣruuṣa sṇejva  
hṇəsve hṇəsve  
hṇəṇṇ hiṇsṇə ṣṇaddhə ardṇə ardṇə daridryem daridryem sēṇhriṇṇə  
etēcchrutva  
digvṇetəm ṣəṭṭrimṇə yəṭprəmaṇəm jəmbvāmṇəle



iv. ulka phelgu svelpe elpeprane gulphite ulbe pragelbha  
 helfabden helsendhih velh pragelbhyem jelhū mīlhuṣe  
 kleṣaḥ glāṣṭ plave pīpluh oḅlinga kekubhlabhah mleccḥah vlinati  
 flokah fleşah sihlah hładete ucchlakhā utkleṣah utplave

pereṣaṃ cetāṃsi pretidivesamaradhya behu ha  
 prasadeṃ kiṃ netuṃ vijāsi hrdaye kleṣakelilem  
 prasenne tveyyenteh sveyamuditecintamaṇigūṇe  
 vimuktah saṅkalpeḥ kimebhileṣiteṃ puṣyati na te

Class 4.

i.a. aṣṭeryam preṣṇah jmaṣru puṣkale bleṣkem sṛṣṭih kṛṣṇe  
 puṣpem niṣphale uṣṣmen fleşma saṃskṛte akḥelite jyeṣṭha ṣṭhyuuta  
 entehsthe snigdhe sprṣṭe sphuurtih bhāsmā jreṣṭhatvam ṣcyute drṣṭva  
 dāṃṣṭra varṣṇeye nemoṣte-stu

b. prakṣiras pretyaṅjiras tapṣuka tanṣuke ṣaṭjastre rapṣate akṣerem  
 tiryāṅṣu ṣeṭṣeṣṭih kṣetrejṇe dikṣeme liṣu vetṣah sugaṅṣereti  
 flekṣṇe utkṣipte bhakṣye matsyeh tetsthele kṣvete epkṛtsnā kartṣnyem  
 vibhṛeṣṭeṣṭchenne kermephaleprepsurlēbdhah nabhaṣprjēḥ dharṣṭyem  
 etatkṣetrem

ii. grhṇati vahnih hnute brahmaṇe prañhestah prañhestah iṣṭanbhanhi

agnimiṣṭe purohitam yajṇasya devamrtvijam / hotaram ratnedhatemam  
 agnih puurvobharrṣibhirliḍyo nuutaneṣṛute / sa devam eḥa vākṣati

tetrapeṣyetsṭhitanparthah pitṛrnethe pitamahan  
 acaryanmatulanbhrantrrputranpēṭtransekhimṣtethe

sektah karmenyavidvaṃso yatha kurvanti bharete  
 kuryadvidvaṃstetha-sekteṣcikīrṣurlokesaṅgrahem

naṣṭve kiṃcitkeromiiti yukto menyete tatttvevit  
 paṣyēṣṭrṇvensprṣēṣṭjighṛenneṣṭnāgeccḥaṣvepenṣvaseṣaṇ

ajṇakiirtih palanem brahmaṇam danam bhogo mitṛesaṃrakṣeṇam ca  
 yeṣamete ṣaḍgūṇa na prāvṛttah korthasteṣam parthivopaṣṛeyēṇe



## HINDI SECTION



# CHAPTER 1

## ARRANGEMENT OF THE SYLLABARY

The Devanagari Script is used in writing Hindi (हिन्दी) and the arrangement of the characters in the syllabary is the same as the Sanskrit arrangement.<sup>1</sup> Some of the characters are used only in writing Sanskrit loanwords, but most of them may be found in literary texts. Some of the characters are modified for representing sounds occurring in Persian and Arabic loanwords.

The script is usually referred to as बालबोध (balabodh), 'that can be understood by a child'. Each character is called अक्षर (akṣar), and the syllabic series is called वर्णमाला (varṇamala, 'character-series'). The terms used by Hindi grammarians to refer to the script are similar to those used in Sanskrit, but as the realisation of the characters in Hindi differs somewhat from the Sanskrit system in respect of consonant characters realised with the vowel *e*, these terms are used in this section in the Hindi form, and are transcribed in accordance with the realisation of the characters in Hindi. The following examples illustrate the difference between the terms used in the Sanskrit section and the corresponding terms used in this section:

Sanskrit	अक्षरम्	(akṣeram),	Hindi	अक्षर	(akṣar)
	विरामः	(virameḥ),		विराम	(viram)
	अन्तःस्थ	(antehsthe),		अन्तस्थ	(antesth)

The table given below in this chapter shows the arrangement of the Hindi syllabary in roman notation. The sounds occurring in Arabic

---

1. See Sanskrit, Ch.1.



and Persian loanwords, and the intervocalic realisation of the characters realised initially as *qə* and *qhe* , are represented in the roman notation as follows:

*q* , for the voiceless uvular plosive, क़

*x* , for the voiceless velar fricative, ख़

*ɣ* , for the voiced velar fricative, ग़

*z* , for the voiced dental fricative, ज़ .

*f* , for the voiceless labial fricative, फ़

*ɽ* , *ɽh* , for the retroflex flapped consonants ड़ and ढ़

Nasalisation of vowels is shown by the superscript ~ .

As the Devanagari system of writing is syllabic, and the characters in the syllabary represent syllables consisting either of a vowel or of a consonant followed by the vowel *ə* , the roman table shows each consonant with this vowel. This vowel, when realised with a consonant character, is usually referred to in English texts as the 'inherent' vowel<sup>1</sup>.

The series of vowels includes 'short' *i* and 'long' *ii* , 'short' *u* and 'long' *uu* . These pairs of vowels occur in Hindi words, some words being always written with the 'short' vowel and others with the 'long' vowel. There are certain pairs of words which are distinguished in meaning by the writing of the 'short' or the 'long' vowel, and other words in which the 'short' or the 'long' vowel is written, but no distinction is made in speech. In transcribing examples, these vowels are written as 'short' or 'long' in accordance with Hindi orthography, and not in relation to 'length' of spoken vowel sounds.

---

1. See Sanskrit, Ch.1.

## Hindi Syllabary in Roman Notation

CONSONANTS with ə			1 Velar	2 Palatal	3 Retro- flex	4 Dental	5 Labial
P l o s i v e s	Voiceless	Unaspirated	kə <sup>1</sup>	cə	ʈə	tə	pə
		Aspirated	khə	chə	ʈhə	thə	phə
	Voiced	Unaspirated	gə	jə	ɖə <sup>2</sup>	də	bə
		Aspirated	ghə	jhə	ɖhə <sup>2</sup>	dhə	bhə
	Nasal		(ŋə) <sup>3</sup>	(ɲə) <sup>3</sup>	ɳə <sup>4</sup>	nə	mə
Semivowels				yə	rə	lə	və <sup>5</sup>
Fricatives		Voiceless	xə <sup>6</sup>	ʃə	ʂə <sup>4</sup>	sə	fə <sup>6</sup>
		Voiced	ɣə <sup>6</sup>			zə <sup>6</sup>	
Aspirate			hə				
VOWELS		ə a	i ii	u uu	e ə̃	o ə̃	r <sup>7</sup>
MODIFIERS		Nasal - ŋ and ~			Aspirated - h		

Notes on the syllables marked 1 - 7 in the above table:

1. The character representing the syllable kə is modified to represent the uvular plosive, qə.
2. The characters representing these two syllables are modified to represent the medial and final realisation of these characters

as flapped sounds, written as  $\text{ɾ}$  and  $\text{ɽ}$  in the transcription.

3. The characters representing  $\text{ŋə}$  and  $\text{ɲə}$  are not written as single characters in Hindi, but only in combination with other characters, illustrated below in Chapter 3.
4. The two characters representing  $\text{ŋə}$  and  $\text{ʂə}$  occur only in Sanskrit loanwords, and do not occur initially.
5. The character represented by  $\text{və}$  is usually realised with labiodental articulation; or, initially, as a bilabial plosive.
6. These syllables are written by modifying other characters which represent sounds somewhat similar in articulation:  
 $\text{xə}$  with the character for  $\text{khe}$  ;  $\text{fə}$  with the character for  $\text{phə}$  ;  
 $\text{yə}$  with the character for  $\text{gə}$  ;  $\text{zə}$  with the character for  $\text{jə}$
7. This vowel, syllabic  $\text{r}$  , occurs only in a few Sanskrit loanwords.



## CHAPTER 2

### CHARACTERS OF THE SYLLABARY

The characters of the Devanagari Script used in writing Hindi are those given in the Sanskrit section, with the terms which are used by Hindi grammarians in referring to them and to the sounds which they represent. The method of writing the characters is that described in the Introduction, and in the notes on the calligraphy of special characters as they are given in the tables.

The characters, and the realisation of them in reading Hindi, are discussed in this chapter under the same headings as in the Sanskrit section: Consonant Characters, Vowel Characters and Vowel Signs, and Modifiers<sup>1</sup>.

#### 1. Consonant Characters.

The consonant characters are arranged in three groups: 'vargiiy' characters, 'antasth' characters, and 'uṣṣm' characters<sup>2</sup>. The consonant characters, as they are given in the syllabary, are realised as syllables consisting of an initial consonant, or semi-vowel, followed by the vowel *e*. Characters realised in this way are described as **अकार** (ekar). The realisation of a consonant character without this vowel, that is, as the consonant element of the syllable only, is indicated in the script by writing a diagonal stroke, known as the

---

1. See Sanskrit, Ch.1. for the use of this term.

2. See Sanskrit, Ch.2. References are given throughout this chapter to the divisions and sub-divisions with the corresponding numbers in Chapter 2. of the Sanskrit section.

विराम (viram)<sup>1</sup> at the foot of the character thus, क् , k- , त् , t- .

The realisation of ěkar consonant characters in reading Hindi differs in some respects from the realisation of these characters in Sanskrit. The following notes may be regarded as general guiding principles to which reference may be made later, when the characters are discussed in detail.

- a. A final ěkar consonant character is usually realised with zero-vowel, except in a few Sanskrit loanwords.<sup>2</sup>
- b. A final ěkar character formed by combining two or more consonant characters<sup>3</sup>, or a final ěkar consonant character preceded by a character written with the anusvar representing a nasal consonant<sup>4</sup>, is usually realised with an ə-glide.
- c. A medial ěkar consonant character is realised with zero-vowel, or with an ə-glide, in certain contexts, as, for instance, when such a character occurs as the second character of a word of three or more characters and the following character is written with one of the vowel signs<sup>5</sup>. Other contexts are given later, when the characters are discussed in detail.
- d. When an ěkar consonant character is the final character of a verbal base, it is usually realised with zero-vowel, or with an ə-glide, before the addition of formative particles consisting of a consonant character with a vowel sign.

In the transcription of examples of Hindi words, final ěkar consonant characters realised with zero-vowel, or with an ə-glide,

---

1. See Sanskrit, Ch.2,1.      2. ěkar consonant characters realised with zero-vowel, as described below in notes a. - d., are, however, not written with the viram, which is used mainly in writing certain Sanskrit loanwords.      3. See below, Ch.3.  
 4. See below, 3.i.anusvar.      5. See below, 2.ii.



are transcribed without ə, and medial əkar characters realised in this way are written thus, k', t', p', for guidance in reading. Characters which do not occur in an initial position are indicated by a hyphen prefixed to the syllable in the roman transcription.

1. Characters of the vergiiy group.

The first group of consonant characters consists of twentyfive characters realised as syllables with an initial plosive consonant followed by the vowel ə. These characters are placed in five classes, or वर्ग (verg), according to the position of articulation of the consonant in the syllable they represent. The characters are given in the Sanskrit section.<sup>1</sup> Of these characters, क, ग and ज, ग, do not occur in Hindi words, and occur in Sanskrit loanwords only in combination with other characters.<sup>2</sup> The character झ, ग, occurs only in Sanskrit loanwords in literary Hindi. The characters given as 'Bombay' forms are also used in Hindi writing, but less frequently than those given in the tables. Some of the characters are modified to represent certain sounds in Persian and Arabic loanwords and the intervocalic realisation of ड and ढ.

क	ख	ग	ज	झ	ड़	ढ़
qə	xə	ɣə	ʒə	fə	-ʈə	-ʈhə

The characters ड and ढ occur only initially; ङ and ण are never initial, but may be medial or final.

Reading examples.<sup>3</sup>

1. One character words, realised as a consonant with the vowel ə.

छ ढ त ठ न

1. See Sanskrit, Ch.2,1.1.

2. See below, Ch.3.

3. For transcription, see page 85.



2. Two character words, the final character realised with zero-vowel.

कब धन भट चढ़ धन ठब छत चख फट घट  
फण धन जड़ खम गज़ गम कद डग कफ मठ

3. Three character words

मगन भगड़ फबन खड़क कदम धमक गज़ब पढ़त  
भजन चणक पकड़ घटक कथन छमक खतम ज़खम

4. Four character words, second characters realised with zero-vowel or with an a-glide, final characters with zero-vowel.

धमकत बचपन पतझड़ जमघट फटकन भटपट

11. Characters of the antesth group.

There are four characters in this group, representing syllables consisting of an initial semi-vowel with the vowel *e*. The characters are given in the Sanskrit section<sup>1</sup>.

When the characters य , ye and व , ve , occur initially, or with one of the vowel signs, they are realised as consonants followed by a vowel. When they occur medially in a position in which they are realised with a following vowel, they are realised as consonants. When they occur medially in positions in which an *ekar* consonant character is realised with zero-vowel, or finally, they are realised as semi-vowels, forming a diphthong with the vowel of the preceding syllable.

Examples: यमन वक भय लव  
yamen vek bhay lev

The character व is often realised initially or medially as *be*.

1. See Sanskrit, Ch.2,1.11.

Reading examples.<sup>1</sup>

1. One character word.<sup>2</sup> व

2. Two character words, the final character realised with zero-vowel.

कर जल वर फल लड़ घर वन तर खल छय  
धर नव जर छल वय बल लव जय यम भर

3. Three character words, the final character realised with zero-vowel.

बदल चलन गरज चपल वजन कबर लयन वरण  
गरज तरफ यमल वचन यवन खबर यमक गजल

4. Four and five character words; second characters in four character words and third character in five character words, realised with zero-vowel or with an e-glide, final characters with zero-vowel.

मतलब लमछड़ चढ़कर करवट दलकन कटफल  
चमरख खरवट परजवट पकड़कर मचलपन

iii. Characters of the uugm group.

This group consists of three characters which are realised as fricative consonants followed by the vowel *e*, and one which is realised as an aspirate followed by *e*. These characters are given in the Sanskrit section<sup>3</sup>. The character ष, *ʃe*, occurs only in some Sanskrit loanwords used in literary Hindi. It is often realised in ordinary speech as *ʃe*. The last character in the Hindi syllabary is ह, *he*.

1. For transcription, see p. 85.

2. This is the only entesth character which occurs as a word.

3. See Sanskrit, Ch.2,1.iii.



In words consisting of *ekar* consonant characters only, the realisation of ह , ha , varies according to its position in the word.

- a. When ह occurs medially preceded by an *ekar* character, and is followed by another consonant character, it is often realised in combination with the vowel *ə* of the preceding character as aspiration accompanying the vowel (*æ*), as in

शहर	पहर	रहन	लहसन
ʃəhər(ʃæhr)	pəhər(pæhr)	rəhən(ræhn)	ləhəsən(læhsən)

- b. When ह occurs as a final character following an *ekar* consonant character it is generally realised in combination with the vowel of the preceding character as (a). Examples:

तरह	जगह	Exceptions:	यह	वह	सह
təreh(təra)	jəgeh(jəga)		yeh(yeh)	veh(voh)	səhe

Reading examples.<sup>1</sup>

1. None of the *uṣm* characters occurs as a word.
2. Two character words, the final character realised with zero-vowel.  
दस हर शठ बस हल कश हम सब हठ  
हक धस यश रस हड़ षट् हद गश सर
3. Three character words, the final character realised with zero-vowel.  
शपथ समझ शरण हसद सरस शबर सफ़र  
हज़म सगढ़ समय हलफ़ शकल कलश तरस
4. Four character words, final characters realised with zero-vowel, second characters with zero-vowel or with an *ə*-glide.

मसनद	कसरत	हज़रत	सरकश	खसलत
हटकन	हरकत	हलचल	मसरफ़	सरदल

1. For transcription, see p.85.



## 2. Vowel Characters and Vowel Signs.

### 1. Vowel Characters.

The vowel characters used in writing Hindi are the same as those given in the Sanskrit section<sup>1</sup>, omitting the characters representing syllabic rr and syllabic l and ll . The character कृ occurs in Sanskrit loanwords used in literary Hindi. The vowel characters are usually placed first in the syllabary, and they are referred to as *ekar*, *akar*, *ikar* and so on. The Bombay forms of the characters are sometimes written in Hindi, but the forms given in the table are more usual.

The general rules concerning the realisation of *ekar* consonant characters should be applied in reading all examples given below, unless special notes are added.

Reading examples.<sup>2</sup>

#### 1. Words consisting of vowel characters only.

आ आई आओ आप आओ आई आप

#### 2. Words consisting of vowel characters and *ekar* consonant characters.

अब एक ऊठ और उन इन ओढ़ ऊख आग ईख  
ओम् कृण ऋण इस ईद पेश ओर गई गप सई  
इधर ऊपर पेज़न औषध अगर ओझर औरत पेपन

### ii. Vowel Signs.

The vowel signs used in writing Hindi, corresponding with the vowel characters and written with the *ekar* form of the character क, are given in the Sanskrit section.<sup>3</sup> Each character represents a

1. See Sanskrit, Ch.2,2.i.  
3. See Sanskrit, Ch.2,2.ii.

2. For transcription, see p.85.

syllable consisting of a consonant followed by one of the vowels a to əv̄. The vowel signs are referred to as मात्रा (matra), as in प की मात्रा ( e kii matra , 'the sign of e ').

Reading examples.<sup>1</sup>

1. One character words.

भी सौ का दे पै जी ले या जो खा वे  
के पी धो जा नौ दो जू है से सो थी

2. Two character words.

दूध भात चीज़ बैठ खुल मौज छेद दृढ़<sup>2</sup> भील  
होय नाव दिन गाय झूट उषा ऋतु हुई धोष  
लिप शुरू पैसा धोबी खाना भीति कृपा बड़ी जाए

3. Three character words.

मैदान हज़ूर किताब कारण फ़क़ीर तैयार दीजिए  
पृथिवी रुपैये केऊर सुअर देखाओ सुनाई बहुधा

4. Words of four or more characters. Numbers in brackets indicate the realisation of akar consonant characters with zero-vowel, or with an ə-glide, if the words are not to be read according to the rules given above. Most words of more than four characters are compounds in which the final character of the first part, if akar, is realised with zero-vowel.

मज़दूर कमज़ोर अफ़सोस नज़दिक दरवाज़ा घड़ियाल  
बेइनामी इसीलिए चतुराई बैलगाड़ी सौदागर रोज़गारी  
बनावटी [3] मुसलमान [3] ख़बरदार [3] ख़िदमतगार [2,4]

1. For transcription of examples, see p.85.

2. A Sanskrit loanword, with final qhe .



The following rules concerning the realisation of *ekar* consonant characters in words which have vowel characters and signs provide some guidance for reading from the script, though the only reliable guide is a knowledge of the spoken language.

- a. When a medial *ekar* consonant character, in a three character word, is followed by a final character with a vowel sign, it is usually realised with zero-vowel, or with an *a*-glide, e.g.

रेशमी	अपना	लड़का	लकड़ा	परदा	सदरी
reʃ'mii	ap'na	leɽ'ka	lek'ɽa	per'da	səd'rii

- b. i. When a verbal base ends in an *ekar* consonant character, this character is realised with zero-vowel, or with an *a*-glide, before formative particles which consist of a consonant character with a vowel sign e.g.

सक	सकना	सकती	बोल	बोलता	बोलते
sək-	sək-na	sək-tii	bol	bol-ta	bol-te

ii. When a verbal base consists of three or more characters, the final and pre-final characters being *ekar* consonant characters, the realisation of these characters varies according to the form of the formative particles which are added. This variation is illustrated in the following examples:

समझ	समझा	समझता	समझकर	समझाना
səmaʃh	səm'jha	səməʃh-ta	səməʃh-ker	səm'jhana

- c. Medial ह , ha , हि , hi and हु , hu are realised as follows:

i. Medial ह , preceded by a consonant character with a vowel sign is realised as aspiration of the vowel of the preceding syllable.

e.g.	चाहना	मिहनत	तुहमत	बेहतर	सोहबत
	cahna	mihnət	tuhmet	behtar	sohbet



ii. Medial हि , preceded by an əkar character, may be realised in coalescence with the vowel of a preceding əkar character as əʃh.

e.g. पहिला बहिरा बहिन  
pəhila or pəʃhila bəhira or bəʃhira bəhin or bəʃhn

iii. Medial हु , preceded by an əkar character, may be realised in coalescence with the vowel of a preceding əkar character as əʋh.

e.g. बहुत पहुँना  
bəhut or bəʋht pəhuṛ-na or pəʋhṛ-na

Reading examples, illustrating the above notes, and notes a. and b. under 1.iii (uṣm characters).<sup>1</sup>

- a. खिड़की दूसरा इतना आदमी कपड़ा लोमड़ी बावली फायदा  
b. देखना बैठती लिखता पकड़ना खबरती पकड़ना ठलकना  
c. तेरह चौदह सुबह बगैरह गहिरा पहचान ठहरना कचहरी

### 3. Modifiers.

The modifiers, अनुस्वार (ənusvar) and विसर्ग (visərg) are both used in writing Hindi. These are given in the Sanskrit section.<sup>2</sup>

#### 1. ənusvar.

Both forms of this modifier are used in Hindi, the first form, as in अं , being called the ənusvar, and the second form, as in अँ , the cāndrēbindu<sup>3</sup>. The ənusvar is usually written, in preference to the cāndrēbindu, with characters that have any superscribed stroke.

अं	आं	इं	ईं	उं	ऊं	एँ	ऐँ	ओं	औं
əṁ	aṁ	iṁ	iṁ	uṁ	uṁ	eṁ	əṁ	oṁ	əṁ

1. For transcription of examples, see p.86.

2. See Sanskrit, Ch.2,3.i. and ii.

3. 'moon and dot'.

The anusvar and candrabindu are realised in Hindi as follows:

- a. As the nasalisation of the vowel of the character with which it is written. The candrabindu is preferred for representing a nasalised vowel, except when the character has a superscribed stroke; e.g.

हां or हाँ	मुंह or मुँह	थीं	में	हैं
hā	mūh	thīi	mē	hēṛ

Reading examples.<sup>1</sup>

मैं जो हूँ मेह नहीं गएँ ऊँट पाँच गाँव गई  
 ओंस ईट जाऊँ कुएं दोनों वहां आँखें चूस भैंस  
 अँध भोक भौंकना देशों दोरी पोछना भाईओं पहुँचा  
 आऊँगा जापँगे सोह लहंगा मंहगा हँसना पहुँचना

- b. As the nasal consonant of one of the verg. The anusvar written on a character preceding a verglii character is realised as the nasal consonant of the same class as the following character, or as n when the following character is of the ca-verg. The candrabindu is not usually written to represent a nasal consonant. When the anusvar is realised as a nasal consonant before a final ekar character, the final character is realised with an a-glide<sup>2</sup>.

पंख	कंठ	परंतु	हिंदी	संबंध	कंजूस
perkh	kenṭh	perantu	hindii	sambandh	kenjuus

In writing Sanskrit loanwords, there is an alternative and more frequently used method of representing nasal consonants in this context, by combining characters<sup>2</sup>. When the anusvar is realised as a nasal consonant before a final ekar character, the final character is realised with an a-glide<sup>3</sup>.

1. For transcription, see p.86.  
 3. See above, 1. note b.

2. See Sanskrit, Ch.3,3.Class 2.ii.



In some words, this modifier may be realised as in a. or as in b.  
The realisation as in b. is more usual when the character with the  
anusvar is akar. e.g. **अँक** **रँग**

ək or ɐŋk

rəŋg or rɐŋg

Reading Examples.<sup>1</sup>

पंडित आरंभ संगत ठंड अजीर पसंद बंधन संघट  
कंपना पंजाब जंगल बंदी सिंग डिंब अंदर अंगुल  
शंख संघ पंचमी खंभा अंत कुटुंब मनोरंजक

c. When the anusvar is written on a character preceding one of the  
əntəsth or uṣm characters, as in Sanskrit loanwords and learn-  
ed words used in the literary language, it is realised in various  
ways. Among the several ways of realising the anusvar in this con-  
text used by speakers in different parts of India<sup>2</sup>, the usual  
Hindi practice is illustrated by the following examples:

anusvar before य , र , ल , श , स and ह , realised as n , or  
as the nasalisation of the vowel of the syllable, e.g.

संयोग	संराग	संलग्न <sup>3</sup>	संशय	अहिंसा	सिंह
sənyog	sənræg	sənləgn	səɳʃəy	əhinsa	siɳhə
or səyog	sə̃ræg	sə̃ləgn	sə̃ʃəy	əhisa	sihə

anusvar before व , realised as m , the character व being.  
usually realised as b in this context, e.g.

संवाद	वारंवार	कुंवारी
səmvad (səmbad)	varemv̄ar (baremv̄ar)	but kũvarii

1. For transcription, see p.86.

2. See Sanskrit, Ch.2,3.i.note c.

3. The last character in this word represents ग् combined with न.



## ii. viserg.

This modifier is rarely used in writing Hindi. It occurs in some Sanskrit loanwords used mainly in the literary language, and in a few Hindi words. When written with a medial character, it is usually realised either as strong aspiration after the syllable represented by the character with which it is written, as in reading learned words from a literary text; or, in less formal reading, as the doubling of the consonant of the following character; for example:

दुःख, dukhə or dukkh अंतःकरण, əntəhkəreŋ or əntəkkəreŋ

When the viserg is written with a final character, it is realised as strong aspiration following the final syllable, for instance, in learned words such as पुनः, punəh, विशेषतः, vifeṣ'təh ; or it may be disregarded, as in छः, chə .

4. The Complete Syllabary.

The arrangement of the characters of the Hindi syllabary in the traditional order is similar to that given in the Sanskrit section, omitting the vowel characters ऋ, ॠ and ॡ.<sup>1</sup> The table in which all the vowel characters, except ऋ, and the modifiers added to the character अ are placed at the head of a series of columns consisting of every consonant in the əkar form, with each of the vowel signs and each of the modifiers, is called in Hindi the बारहखड़ी, bareh-khəṛī, the 'twelve characters'. This table is often recited in schools by children learning to read.

---

1. See Sanskrit, Ch.2,4.

These two tables show the order in which the characters are placed as the initial characters of words in dictionaries, which is the same as the order in Sanskrit. Words beginning with the modified characters are placed in the series of words beginning with the corresponding unmodified characters.

#### 5. Numerals.

The numerals used in Hindi are given in the Sanskrit section.<sup>1</sup> Both the 'Hindi' forms and the 'Bombay' forms are used in modern Hindi printing.

#### 6. Punctuation.

In prose writing, the end of a sentence is marked with an upright stroke of the same height as the upright stroke of a character. Other punctuation marks are used as in English. This system is illustrated in the Hindi prose passage at the end of this section<sup>2</sup>. The system of punctuation used in verse is the same as that used in Sanskrit<sup>3</sup>.

---

1. See Sanskrit, Ch.2,5.

2. See end of Ch.3.

3. See Sanskrit, Ch.2,3.ii. Reading examples.

## CHAPTER 3

### CONJUNCT CHARACTERS

Two or more consonant characters may be combined in writing Hindi to represent consonants which are realised without an intervening vowel. Characters formed by combining other characters are called संयुक्ताक्षर (senyuktakṣar<sup>1</sup>) by Hindi grammarians. The construction and calligraphy of conjunct characters are described in the Sanskrit section<sup>2</sup>. The conjunct characters used in writing Hindi are classified in this chapter in the same way as the Sanskrit conjunct characters<sup>3</sup>.

#### 1. Contexts of Conjunct Characters in Hindi.

Conjunct characters occur in Hindi in these contexts:

- i. In Hindi words, that is, words not borrowed from Sanskrit or from other languages; e.g.

बच्चा  
becca

क्योंकि  
kyōki

मक्खी  
makkhi

- ii. In Sanskrit loanwords, either words commonly used in Hindi, or learned loanwords used in the literary language; e.g.

पुस्तक  
pustek

स्त्री  
strii

शब्द  
ṣabd

- iii. In loanwords from other languages; e.g.

दरख़त  
deraxt

हफ़्ता  
hefta

स्टेशन  
stēṣen

---

1. 'joined character'. 2. See Sanskrit, Ch.3,1. 3. ibid. Ch.3,3.



## 2. Realisation of conjunct characters in Hindi.

Conjunct characters are realised in reading as syllables consisting of two or more consonants followed by a vowel. When an *ekar* conjunct character occurs as the final character of a word, it is usually realised with an *ə*-glide, as in गुप्त , gupt', शास्त्र , jastr'.<sup>1</sup>

The realisation in modern Hindi of *ekar* characters with zero-vowel in certain positions in words<sup>2</sup> gives rise to a problem of spelling. For instance, when a formative particle beginning with a consonant character is added to a verbal base ending in a final *ekar* consonant character, the final character of the base is usually realised with zero-vowel. This realisation of the consecutive characters is similar to the realisation of a conjunct character. Similar problems arise in other instances, where an *ekar* consonant character is realised with zero-vowel before a following consonant character, and in compound words in which the first part ends in an *ekar* consonant character, and the second part begins with a consonant character.<sup>3</sup>

## 3. Classes of Conjunct Characters in Hindi.<sup>4</sup>

All the classes of conjunct characters given in the Sanskrit section occur in Hindi, but in some of the classes only a few of the characters are used. Those used in writing Hindi are illustrated by the examples given in each class, which include some Sanskrit loanwords which are commonly used in Hindi. More rarely used loanwords, some of which may occur in literary Hindi, are included among the examples given with each class in the Sanskrit section.

- 
1. In the transcription of examples, this glide is not indicated in words to which this rule applies. 2. See above, Ch.2,1. notes a. to d. 3. Examples of such words are given below, with each class of conjunct characters. 4. See Sanskrit, Ch.3,3.

Class 1. Two similar characters joined.

The series of characters in this class occurring in Sanskrit is given in that section<sup>1</sup>. Most of the consonant characters of the Hindi syllabary occur in this class, but some occur only in Sanskrit loan-words used in the literary language. The character representing -rre is written as र्र , the superscribed stroke representing र् when preceding another consonant<sup>2</sup>. The modified characters ड़ and ढ़ do not occur in this class, but क़क़ , qqə , फ़फ़ , ffə , and ज़ज़ , zzə are written in Persian and Arabic loanwords.

A character representing an aspirated consonant is not written in Sanskrit as the first part of a conjunct character in this class, but in writing Hindi the characters ख़ख़ , khkhə and ठ़ , [h]tʰə are sometimes used. The combination -mmə may be alternatively represented by writing an anusvar with the character preceding म , as in उम्मीद or उंमीद , ummid .

The following examples illustrate Hindi words in which two consecutive consonant characters, the first being əkar, are realised in ordinary speech in the same way as conjunct characters:

सन्न	बनना	गुस्से	उससे
sənn	bən-na <sup>3</sup>	gusse	us-se <sup>4</sup>

Reading examples<sup>5</sup>.

पक्का	हुक्का	मक्खन	लगी	घुग्घू	बच्ची	हच्छा
लज्जा	इज़्जत	फ़ज़्ज़र	पट्टा	चिट्ठी	अड्डा	बुड्डा
पत्थर	बदल	शुद्ध	अन्न	छप्पर	फुफ़ूस	डिब्बी
भबभड़	किम्मत	रय्यत	हरा	किल्ली	नब्बे	हिस्सा

1. See Sanskrit, Ch.3, Class.1.

3. Verbal form.

5. For transcription, see p.86.

2. See below, Class 3.iii.a.

4. Pronoun with suffix.



Class 2. Two vergiily characters joined.

The conjunct characters in this class which occur in Sanskrit are given in the Sanskrit section<sup>1</sup>. Some of the more common conjunct characters of this class occurring in Hindi, mostly in Sanskrit loanwords, are given below, with the addition of some conjunct characters occurring in Persian and Arabic loanwords. Some of the examples given in the Sanskrit section may be found in Hindi texts, in learned loanwords in the literary language.

1. <sup>2</sup>	क्त	त्क	ग्द	द्र	प्त	त्प	ब्द	दु
	-kte	-tke	-gde	-dge	-pte	-tpe	-bde	-dbe
	रत्त	ब्ज	ब्ज	क्त	क्ब	क्फ	फ्त	ब्त
	-rte	-bje	-bze	-qte	-qbe	-qfe	-fte	-bte

ii. Most of the characters given under ii.a. in the Sanskrit section are written in literary Hindi, this method of representing a homorganic nasal consonant preceding one of the vergiily characters being generally preferred to the use of the anusvar, in writing Sanskrit loanwords<sup>3</sup>. Among the characters given in the Sanskrit section under ii.b., only ज्ञ, jne and त्न, -tne, occur in Hindi. The character ज्ञ is not calligraphically a conjunct character, and it is often included in the syllabic series. It is usually realised as gye, with nasalisation of the following vowel<sup>4</sup>. In Hindi dictionaries, words beginning with this character are placed after words beginning with जौ.

iii. These characters occur in Sanskrit loanwords:

क्म	ग्न	घ्न	त्म	द्व	प्न
-kme	-gne	-ghne	-tme	-dme	-pne

1. See Sanskrit, Ch.3, Class 2. 2. The numbers i. - iv. correspond to the arrangement of these characters in the Sanskrit section.  
3. See above, Ch.2, i.b. 4. Cf. gye, in Class 3.i. below.



iv. Of the characters in this group, only ड्, -ṛme and न्म , -nme occur in Hindi, in Sanskrit loanwords.

The following examples illustrate Hindi words in which consecutive consonant characters, the first being əkar, are realised in ordinary speech in the same way as conjunct characters:

शक्ति	सकती	रब्त	दबता	पद्मा	आदमी
ʃəkti	sək-tii <sup>1</sup>	rəbt	dəb-ta <sup>1</sup>	pədma	ad'mii

Reading examples.<sup>2</sup>

भक्ति वक्रत सत्कार दरुत सद्गुण वक्रफ़ एक्बीस  
 कुब्ज सब्ज गुप्त उत्पन्न हफ़ता शब्द लफ़्ज़ लफ़्फ़  
 लिङ्ग सङ्घ पञ्चमी मञ्चा घण्टा ठण्ड शान्ति लम्पट  
 आरम्भ परन्तु उपरान्त ज्ञान जिज्ञासु रत्न सम्बन्ध  
 रुक्मिणी हुक्म आत्मा ख़त्म लग्न उम्दा  
 जन्म वाङ्मय

Class 3. Characters joined with əntəsth characters.

1. Characters joined with following य .

The series of characters in this class occurring in Sanskrit is given in that section.<sup>3</sup> Most of the consonant characters of the Hindi syllabary can be combined with following य , though some of these conjunct characters occur only in Sanskrit loanwords in the literary language. Some of the examples given in the Sanskrit section may occur in a Hindi literary text. Of the modified characters, ख़ and ज़ occur combined with following य in Persian and Arabic loanwords.

1. Verbal form. 2. For transcription, see p.86.

3. See Sanskrit, Ch.3,3.Class 3.iii.b.

Reading Examples.<sup>1</sup>

क्यों मुख्य ख्याल ग्यारह ज्यों ज्यादा ड्योढ़ी पुण्य  
 त्यों पथ्य उद्योग मध्य न्याय प्यारी व्यथा सभ्य  
 कार्य्य अमूल्य व्याख्यान अवश्य मनुष्य स्याल व्यथा

## ii. Characters joined with following व .

The series of characters in this class occurring in Sanskrit is given in that section.<sup>2</sup> Only a few of the characters of the Hindi syllabary occur combined with following व , and those that occur are mainly in Sanskrit loanwords. Of the modified characters, only स्व is combined with व .

Reading examples.<sup>3</sup>

पक्कान्न ख्वाब ग्वार ज्वार तत्त्व द्वारा ध्वनि विश्व  
 स्वामी सर्व सर्व ईश्वर कारा क्वचित् श्वास स्वप्न

## iii. Characters joined with preceding र् or with following र .

## a. र् preceding.

Characters realised with preceding r , represented by the stroke called रेफ (ref), are illustrated, with notes on calligraphy, in the Sanskrit section.<sup>4</sup> These characters occur in Hindi words, in Sanskrit loanwords, and in loanwords from other languages. The examples given below illustrate the characters of this class which occur in Hindi. The characters ग , ज , त , ब , म , य and व are often doubled when written with ref .

1. For transcription, see p.86. 2. See Sanskrit, Ch.3, Class 3.ii.  
 3. For transcription, see p.86. 4. See Sanskrit, Ch.3, Class 3.iii.a.



The following examples illustrate Hindi words in which consecutive consonant characters, the first being *akar*, are realised in ordinary speech in the same way as conjunct characters:

कर्ता	करता	सर्व	दरवाज़ा	धर्म	दरमाहा
karta	kar-ta <sup>1</sup>	sarv	dar'vaza	dherm	dar'maha

A few words may be written either with *र* followed by a consonant character or with a character with superscribed *ref* ; e.g.

दरबार	दर्बार	पर्दा	पर्दा	दर्जी	दर्जी
dar'bar	darbar	per'da	perda	dar'jii	darjii

b. *र* following.

Characters realised with *r* following, represented by a short stroke placed either against the upright stroke of the character or beneath the character, are given in the Sanskrit section.<sup>2</sup> The examples given below illustrate the characters of this class which occur in Hindi. The majority of such words are loanwords from Sanskrit and English.

Reading examples.<sup>3</sup>

तर्क	फ़र्क	मूर्ख	सुख	वर्ग	दीर्घ	मुर्गी	स्वर्च	मूर्छित
अर्ज	अर्ज	कोर्ट	गार्ड	वर्षमाला	कीर्ति	अर्थ	उर्दू	अर्द्ध ऊर्फ़
अर्पण	अर्ब	गर्भ	धर्म	आर्य	सर्व	दर्शन	वर्ष	कुर्सी अर्हित
क्रम	क्रम	ग्राम	अंग्रेज़	द्राम	रात्री	पत्र	छिद्र	समुद्र
प्रिय	फ़्राक	नम्र	अब्रु	श्रम	तीव्र	मन्त्र		

iv. Characters joined with preceding *ल्* or with following *ल* .

a. *ल्* preceding.

The characters of this class which occur in Sanskrit are given in that section.<sup>4</sup> The characters occurring in Hindi are illustrated by

1. Verbal form. 2. See Sanskrit, Ch.3,3.Cl.3.iii.b.  
3. For transcription, see p.86. 4. See Sanskrit, Ch.3,3.Cl.3.iv.a.



the examples given below. Some words may be written either with ल followed by a consonant character, or with a conjunct character of this class; e.g. बिलकुल or बिल्कुल , bilkul.

b. ल following.

The characters of this class which occur in Sanskrit are given in that section.<sup>1</sup> The examples given below illustrate the characters which occur in Hindi, in Sanskrit and English loanwords.

Reading examples.<sup>2</sup>

बल्कि मुल्क फाल्गुण इल्तिज़ा इल्मी कुल्हाड़ा इल्ज़ाम उल्था  
अक्क (अकल) फ़स्ल (फ़सल) इस्लाम वस्ल शुक्क क़ास उल्मुख

Class 4. vergiyy characters joined with preceding or following uugm characters.

1. श , ष or स preceding or following vergiyy characters.

a. श् , ष् or स् preceding.

The conjunct characters in this class which occur in Sanskrit are given in the Sanskrit section.<sup>3</sup> Those which are written in Hindi, including those occurring in Sanskrit and other loanwords, are indicated by the examples given below. The following conjunct characters which are not included in the Sanskrit section occur in Hindi, in loanwords from other languages:

इक्र	इत	स्ट	स्व
-ʃqə	-ʃtə	-stə	-sbe

Hindi words in which consecutive consonant characters, the first character being akar, are realised in ordinary speech in the same way

1. See Sanskrit, Ch.4.3, Cl.3.iv.b. 2. For transcription, see p.87.  
2. See Sanskrit, Ch.4.3, Cl.4.i.a.

as conjunct characters are illustrated by these examples:

रस्ता	बसता	किस्मत	उसमें
rasta	bās-ta <sup>1</sup>	qismat	us-mē <sup>2</sup>

b. श, ष or स following.

The conjunct characters of this class which occur in Sanskrit are given in the Sanskrit section<sup>3</sup>. Only a few of these characters occur in Hindi. The characters which occur are illustrated by the reading examples given below. Some additional characters of this class, not included in the Sanskrit series, occur in loanwords from other languages: रस , xse , रुश , xje , फ़स , fse .

Reading examples.<sup>4</sup>

a. मुश्किल प्रश्न पश्चात् आश्चर्य चश्मा पुष्कल कृष्ण  
राष्ट्र पुस्तक वास्ते वस्त्र स्त्री रास्ता हिन्दुस्थान स्नान  
स्पष्ट स्फूर्ति स्वस्ति स्वस्थ उस्ताद शास्त्र पश्चिम  
किश्ती इश्तिहा निस्वत इश्क स्कूल स्टेशन पोस्ट

b. अक्षर अक्षर परीक्षा क्षमा लक्ष्मी वत्स प्रत्यक्ष  
बरख़श शरख़स अफ़सोस

ii. ह preceding or following an anunasik character<sup>5</sup>.

Only three characters of this class occur in Hindi, illustrated

by these examples:-

a. ह preceding म , as in ब्राह्मण , brahmaṇ .

b. ह following न् , or म् , as in न्हान , nhan , उन्हें , unhē ,

उन्हारी unharīi ; म्हारी , mharīi , कुम्हड़ा , kumhara , तुम्हें , tumhē .

1. Verbal form. 2. Pronoun with suffix.

3. See Sanskrit, Ch.3.3.Cl.4.i.b. 4. For transcription, see p.87.

5. See Sanskrit, Ch.3.3.Cl.4.ii.a. and b.



Hindi prose passage<sup>1</sup>

किसी जाति के जीवन में उसके द्वारा प्रयुक्त शब्दों का अत्यंत महत्वपूर्ण स्थान है। आवश्यकता तथा स्थिति के अनुसार इन प्रयुक्त शब्दों का आगम अथवा लोप तथा वाच्य, लक्ष्य एवं द्योत्य भावों में परिवर्तन होता रहता है। अतएव और सामग्री के अभाव में इन शब्दों के द्वारा किसी जाति के जीवन की भिन्न भिन्न स्थितियों का इतिहास उपस्थित किया जा सकता है। इसी आधार पर आर्य जाति का प्राचीनतम इतिहास प्रस्तुत किया गया है और ज्यों ज्यों सामग्री उपलब्ध होती जा रही है, त्यों त्यों यह इतिहास ठीक किया जा रहा है। इस अवस्था में यह बात स्पष्ट समझ में आ सकती है कि जातीय जीवन में शब्दों का स्थान कितने महत्व का है। जातीय साहित्य को रक्षित करने तथा उसके भविष्य को सुचारु और समुज्ज्वल बनाने के अतिरिक्त वह किसी भाषा की सम्पन्नता या शब्द-बहुलता का सूचक और उस भाषा के साहित्य का अध्ययन करनेवालों का सब से बड़ा सहायक भी होता है। विशेषतः अन्य भाषा-भाषियों और विदेशियों के लिये तो उसका और भी अधिक उपयोग होता है। इन सब दृष्टियों से शब्द-कोश किसी भाषा के साहित्य की मूल्यवान् संपत्ति और उस भाषा के भांडार का सब से बड़ा निदर्शक होता है।

1. Hindi Shabdāsāgar, p.1, ed. Shāmsundardās, pub. 1916, by Kāshi-Nāgari-Sabhā.



Transcription of Reading ExamplesChapter 2.

1.i.    chə      qhə      tə      ʃhə      nə

kəb    dhən    bhəʃ    cəʃh    ghen    qhəb    chət    cəkh    jhəʃ    ghəʃ  
 phən    then    jər    xəm    gəz    ʏəm    qəd    qəg    kəf    məʃh

məgen    jhəgər    phəben    khərek    qədəm    dhəmək    ʏəzəb    pərhet  
 bhəjən    cəqək    pəkər    ghəʃək    kəthən    chəmək    xətəm    zəxəm

dhəm'kət    bəc'pən    pət'jhər    jəm'ghəʃ    phəʃ'kən    jhəʃ'pət

1.ii.    və

kər    jəl    vər    phəl    lər    għər    vən    tər    khəl    chəy  
 dher    nəv    jər    chəl    vey    bel    lev    jey    yəm    bħər

bədəl    cələn    gərəj    cəpəl    vəzen    qəber    leyən    verən  
 ʏərəz    tərəf    yəməl    vəcən    yeven    xəber    yəmək    ʏəzəl

mət'ləb    ləm'chər    cəʃh'kər    kər'veʃ    dəl'kən    kət'phəl  
 cəm'rəx    kħər'veʃ    pərəj'veʃ    pəkər'kər    məcəl'pən

1.iii.    dəs    hər    ʃəʃh    bəs    həl    kəʃ    həm    səb    həʃh  
           həq    dhəs    yəʃ    rəs    həʃ    ʃət    həd    ʏəʃ    sər

ʃəpəth    səməjh    ʃərən    həsəd    sərəs    ʃəbər    səfər  
 həzəm    səgəʃh    səməy    hələf    ʃəkəl    kələʃ    tərəs

məs'nəd    kəs'rət    həz'rət    sər'kəʃ    xəs'lət  
 həʃ'kən    hər'kət    həl'cəl    məs'rəf    sər'dəl

2.i.    a      ai      ao      ae      ao      ai      ae

əb    ek    uuʃh    əvr    un    in    oʃh    uukh    ag    iikh  
 ojh    rŋ    rŋ    is    iid    əʏʃ    or    gəii    gəe    səii  
 idħer    uuper    əʏzen    əvʃədħ    əger    ojhər    əvrət    əʏpen

2.ii.    bhii    səv    ka    de    peʏ    jii    le    ya    jo    kha    ve  
           ke    pii    dho    ja    nəv    do    juu    həʏ    se    so    thii

duudħ    bħat    ciiz    bəʏʃh    khul    məvʃ    ched    drqħ    jhiil  
 hoy    nav    din    gay    jhuuʃ    uʃa    rtu    huil    dhoe  
 lie    furuu    peʏsa    dhobii    xana    bhiiti    krpa    bəʃii    jae

məʏdan    huzuur    qitab    karən    fəqilr    təʏyar    diijie  
 prthivii    rupeʏye    keuur    suer    dekhao    sunail    bəhudħa

maz'duur	kam'zor	af'sos	maz'dik	dar'vaza	ghar'iyal
beinamii	isilliye	caturaili	ba'yl'ga'dii	sav'dager	roz'garil
banav'tii	musal'man	xeber'dar	xid'met'gar		

p.13. khiç'kii duus'ra it'na ad'mii kap'ra lom'çii bav'lii phay'da  
dekh-na ba'çh-tii likh-ta pek'raana ghab'ratii pekeç-na qhelek-na  
tereh ca'vdeh aubeh beyerah gahira pehacan çheher-na keceherii

2.1.a.	mäy	jö	hü	mäh	nehii	gä	duj	päc	gäv	gei
ös	iit	jaüu	kuë	donö	vehä	äkhë	ghüus	bhçye		
öd	bhök	bhçk-na	dejö	dçvrii	pöch-na	bhaiiö	äqua			
aüuga	jaëge	söh	lehöga	mehöga	häs-na	pehüc-na				

b.	paçdit	arambh	saget	thend	enjiir	pesend	bendhen	senghet
kamp-na	penjab	jengel	barçii	sing	qimb	ender	engul	
fançh	sengh	penc'mii	khembha	ent	kutumb	menorençak		

### Chapter 3.

#### Class 1.

pekka	huqqa	mekken	leggii	ghugghuu	beccii	iccha
lajja	izzat	jhaçjhar	peçta	ciçthii	edda	buçdha
petther	beddel	juddh	ann	chapper	phupphuus	qibbi
bhabbhag	kimmet	royyat	herra	killii	navve	hissa

#### Class 2.

i.	bhakti	veqt	setkar	derext	sedgun	veqf	ekbiis
	kubj	sabz	gupt	utpenn	hafta	çabd	lafta
ii.	ling	sengh	pencemii	manjha	ghençta	thend	çanti
	arambh	perantu	uperant	jnan (gyan)	jijnasu	ratn	sambendh
iii.	rukminiçii	hugm	atma	xetm	lagn	umda	
iv.	jenm	vançmey					

#### Class 3.i.

kyö	mukhy	xyal	gyeroh	jyö	zyada	gyavçhii	purç
työ	peçhy	udyog	medhy	nyay	pyarii	byetha	sabhy
karyy	amuuly	vyakhyan	evçy	manuçy	syal	vyetha	

#### Class 3.ii.

pekvaan	xvab	gvar	jvar	tettv	dvara	dhveni	vijv
svamii	sarv	sarvv	içjvar	kvara	kvecit	jvas	svapn

#### Class 3.iii.

a. tark ferq muurkh surx vargg diirgh muryii xerc muurchit  
erç erç korç garç varçemala kiirti erth urduu arddh uurf  
erperç erb gerbh dhermm aryy sarvv darçen verç kuraii arhit

b.	krem	krem	gram	engrez	çram	ratrii	petr	chidr	samudr
priy	frak	namr	abru	çram	tiivr	mantr			



## Class 3.iv.

bəlki mulk phalgun iltiza ilmi kulhara ilzam ultha  
 əql (əqəl) fəsl (fəsəl) ixlas vəsl fukl klas ulmukh

## Class 4.

i.a. muskil prəfn pəfcat əfcəry cəfma puskəl kran  
 rəştr pustək vəste vəstr strii rasta hinduəthan snan  
 spəšt sphuurti svesti svəsth ustād fəstr pəfcim  
 kiştii iftiha nisbat ifq skuul sʔəfən post

b. əkşər əkşər pərlikşə kşəma ləkşmii vətə prətyəkş  
 bəxş fəxs əfsə

## Hindi prose passage

kisii jati ke jiven mē us'ke dvara prəyukt jəbdō ka ətyənt mehattvəpuurn sathan həy. avəjyek'ta tetha sthiti ke ənuser in prəyukt jəbdō ka agəm sth'va ləp tetha vacy, ləkşy evəm dyoty bhavō mē pəri-vertən hota rəh-ta həy. ət'evə əvr saməgrii ke əbhav mā in jəbdō ke dvara kisii jati ke jiiven kii bhinn bhinn sthitiyō ka itihās upəsthit kiya ja sək-ta həy. isii adhar pər ary jati ka praciin'təm itihās prə-stut kiya gaya həy əvr jyō jyō saməgrii upələbdh hotii ja rəhii həy, tyō tyō yeh itihās ʔhiik kiya ja rəha həy. is evəstha mē yeh bat spəšt səməjh mē a sək-tii həy ki jatiy jiiven mē jəbdō ka sathan kit'ne mahəttv ka həy. jatiy sahity ko rəkşit kər-ne tetha us-ke bhavişy ko sucaru əvr səmujvəl benəne ke ətirikt vəh kisii bhaga kii səmpenn'ta ya jəbd'behul'ta ka suucək əvr us bhāşa ke sahity ka ədhyəyən kər-ne-valō ka sək se bəra səhayək bhii hota həy. vişəş'tah any bhāşa-bhāşiyō əvr vidəjiyō ke liye to us-ka əvr bhii ədhik upayog hota həy. in sək drəʔtiyō se jəbd-kof kisii bhāşa ke sahity kii muulyevan səmpətti əvr us bhāşa ke bhanḍar ka sək se bəra niderfək hota həy.





## MARATHI SECTION





## CHAPTER 1

### ARRANGEMENT OF THE SYLLABARY

The Devanagari Script is used in writing Marathi ( मराठी ) and the arrangement of the characters in the syllabary is the same as the Sanskrit arrangement<sup>1</sup>. Some of the characters are used only in writing Sanskrit loanwords, but most of them may be found in literary texts.

The script is usually referred to as बालबोध (balabodh), 'that can be understood by a child'. This name is used to refer to the Devanagari script to distinguish it from the cursive script also used in writing Marathi, and known as मोडी (modii). Each character is called अक्षर (akṣar) and the syllabic series is called वर्णमाला (varṇamāla), 'character-series'. The terms used by Marathi grammarians in referring to the characters are similar to those used in Sanskrit, but as the realisation of the characters in Marathi differs somewhat from the Sanskrit system in respect of consonant characters, these terms are used in this section in their Marathi form, and transcribed in accordance with the Marathi realisation of the characters. The difference between the terms used in the Sanskrit section and the corresponding Marathi terms is illustrated by these examples:

Sanskrit	अक्षरम् (akṣaram),	Marathi	अक्षर (akṣar)
	विरामः (viramāḥ),		विराम (viram)
	अन्तःस्थ (antahstha),		अन्तस्थ (antestha)

---

1. See Sanskrit, Ch.1.

The table given below shows the arrangement of the Marathi syllabary in roman notation. As the system of writing is syllabic, the characters in the syllabary represent syllables consisting either of a vowel or of a consonant followed by the vowel ə. The roman table shows each consonant written with this vowel, which, when it is realised with a consonant character, is usually referred to in English texts as the 'inherent vowel'.

CONSONANTS with ə			1 Velar	2 Palatal	3 Retro- flex	4 Dental	5 Labial
P l o s i v e s	Voiceless	Unaspirated	kə	cə tʃə <sup>1</sup>	ʈə	tə	pə
		Aspirated	khə	chə	ʈhə	thə	phə
	Voiced	Unaspirated	gə	ʝə <sup>1</sup> ʒə <sup>1</sup>	ɖə	də	bə
		Aspirated	ghə	ʝhə <sup>1</sup> ʒhə <sup>1</sup>	ɖhə	dhə	bhə
	Nasal		(ŋə) <sup>2</sup>	(ɲə) <sup>2</sup>	ɳə	nə	mə
Semivowels				yə	rə	lə	və <sup>3</sup>
Fricatives				ʃə	ʂə <sup>4</sup>	sə	
Aspirate			hə				
Lateral					ɭə		
VOWELS		ə   a	i   ii	u   uu	e   əʏ	o   əʋ	r <sup>4</sup>
MODIFIERS <sup>5</sup>		Nasal - ɱ , or ~ Aspirated - h					

1. - 4. See notes on following page. 5. See Sanskrit, Chapter 1.



Notes on the syllables marked 1. - 4. in the roman table:

1. The characters representing *ca* , *je* and *jhe* are realised in some words as alveolar consonants, with fricative or affricated articulation. This realisation is transcribed as *tse* , *ze* and *zhe* , as shown in the table.
2. The characters representing *ne* and *pe* do not occur as single characters, but only in combination with other characters, and only in Sanskrit loanwords used in the literary language.
3. The character representing *va* is usually realised with labio-dental articulation.
4. The characters representing *ga* and syllabic *r* occur only in Sanskrit loanwords.

The series of vowels includes 'short' *i* and 'long' *ii*, 'short' *u* and 'long' *uu*. These pairs of vowels occur in Marathi words, and the characters representing the 'short' and the 'long' vowels are written according to certain rules of orthography<sup>1</sup>. This distinction between the 'short' and the 'long' vowels is preserved in the transcription of the characters, though in modern Marathi speech there is often little difference between the pronunciation of words written with the characters representing the 'short' or the 'long' vowels.

The term 'modifier' is explained in the Sanskrit section. Fully nasalised vowels are rare in Marathi and the symbol *ṃ* is used for transcribing the mark of nasalisation only in a systematic transcription of examples for the purpose of describing the contexts in which it is realised. In words in which this mark is given zero-realisation, it is left untranscribed.

---

1. See below, end of Chapter 2.



## C H A P T E R 2

### CHARACTERS OF THE SYLLABARY

The characters of the Devanagari Script used in writing Marathi, and the realisation of them in reading, are discussed in this chapter under the same headings as the characters in the Sanskrit section:

1. Consonant Characters,
2. Vowel Characters and Vowel Signs, and
3. Modifiers.

The style of the characters given in the Sanskrit section is the style generally used in Hindi printing and writing. The forms of the characters given in that section as 'Bombay' forms are used in Marathi printing and writing instead of the corresponding Hindi forms. Other differences of line and form may be seen by comparing the characters given in this section with those given in the Sanskrit section. The Hindi style is not used in Marathi printing or writing.

The method of writing the characters is in general the same as that described in the Introduction, and in the notes on the calligraphy of special characters as they are given in the Sanskrit section. When writing the characters, reference should be made to the corresponding groups of characters in that section.<sup>1</sup>

---

1. References are given throughout this chapter to the divisions and sub-divisions with the corresponding numbers in Chapter 2. of the Sanskrit section.

### 1. Consonant Characters.

The consonant characters are arranged in three groups: 'vərgiil' characters, 'əntəsth' characters and 'uṣṣm' characters.<sup>1</sup> As they are given in the syllabary, these characters are realised as syllables consisting of an initial consonant, or semi-vowel, followed by the vowel ə, and they are described as अकार (əkar). The realisation of a consonant character without this vowel, that is, as the consonant element of the syllable only, is indicated by writing a diagonal stroke known as विराम (viram) at the foot of the character, as in Sanskrit<sup>2</sup>, thus, क्, k-, त्, t-, प्, p-. Characters written with this stroke are described by Marathi grammarians as 'hələnt', as in Sanskrit, but in the teaching of writing in Marathi schools the writing of this stroke is called पाय मोडणे (pay modṇeṃ, 'breaking the foot'), and a character with this stroke is described as लंगडे (lāṅḡḍe, 'lame').

The realisation of əkar consonant characters in reading Marathi differs somewhat from the realisation of these characters in Sanskrit. The following notes may be regarded as general guiding principles to which reference may be made later when the characters are discussed in detail.

- a. A final əkar consonant character is usually realised with zero-vowel, except in a few Sanskrit loanwords.
- b. A final əkar character formed by combining two or more consonant characters<sup>3</sup>, or a final əkar consonant character preceded by a

---

1. See Sanskrit, Ch.2,1.1 - iii. 2. See Sanskrit, Ch.2,1.1. əkar consonant characters realised with zero-vowel, as described below in notes a. - d. are, however, not written with the viram, which is used mainly in writing certain Sanskrit loanwords and Marathi colloquial forms. 3. See below, Ch.3.



character written with the anusvar<sup>1</sup> representing a nasal consonant, is usually realised with an ə-glide.

- c. A medial əkar consonant character is realised with zero-vowel, or with an ə-glide, in certain contexts; as, for instance, when such a character occurs as the second character of a word of three or more characters and the following character is written with one of vowel signs.<sup>2</sup> Other contexts are given later, when the characters are discussed in detail.
- d. When an əkar consonant character is the final character of a verbal base, it is usually realised with zero-vowel, or with an ə-glide, before the addition of suffixes consisting of, or beginning with, a consonant character with one of the vowel signs.

In the transcription of Marathi words, final əkar consonant characters realised with zero-vowel, or with an ə-glide, are written without ə, and medial əkar consonant characters realised in this way are written thus, k', t', p', for guidance in reading. Reference to these notes should be made when reading the examples given with the characters throughout this chapter. Characters which do not occur as initial characters are indicated by a hyphen prefixed to the syllable in the roman transcription.

#### 1. Characters of the vergiyy group.<sup>3</sup>

The first group of consonant characters consists of twentyfive characters representing syllables with an initial plosive consonant followed by the vowel ə. These characters fall into five वर्ग (verg), or classes. The characters in the table given below may be

1. See below, 2.ii.

2. See below, 2.ii. Vowel signs.

3. See Sanskrit, Ch.2,1.i.



compared with the Sanskrit characters, written in the Hindi style.

kə-veṛg	क	ख	ग	घ	ङ
	kə	khə	gə	ghə	-ŋə
cə-veṛg	च	छ	ज	झ	ञ
	cə(tʃə)	chə	jə(zə)	jhə(zhə)	-ɲə
tə-veṛg	ट	ठ	ड	ढ	ण
	tə	tʰə	də	dʰə	-ɳə
tə-veṛg	त	थ	द	ध	न
	tə	tʰə	də	dʰə	nə
pə-veṛg	प	फ	ब	भ	म
	pə	pʰə	bə	bʰə	mə

The characters ङ and ञ do not occur in Marathi words, but they are written, in combination with other characters, in some Sanskrit loanwords used in the literary language.

The three characters च, ज and झ are realised in reading in two ways, according to the word in which they occur, and the vowels with which they are realised when written with one of the vowel signs.

- The palatal realisation, च as cə, ज as jə, and झ as jhə, is made usually in reading Sanskrit loanwords, and always when these characters have the signs of the vowels i, ii or eṃ.
- The alveolar realisation, च as tʃə, ज as zə, and झ as zhə, is made usually in other words, when these characters

are *ekar*, or when they are written with the signs of the vowels *a*, *u*, *uu*, *o* or *ə*<sup>1</sup>.

- c. When these characters are written with the sign of the vowel *e*, the palatal and alveolar realisations occur in an almost even distribution of words, and even may vary from time to time with changing conventions of speech.

No comprehensive rule can be given for the realisation of these three characters, however, and in the reading examples the palatal realisation should be made unless an indication of the alveolar realisation is given.

The following examples illustrate the varying realisation of *ekar* consonant characters in certain contexts:

- a. As the second character of a four character word:

धमकट , *dheməkəṭe* , realised as *dhəm'kəṭ*

- b. In a verbal form, the realisation changing according to the formative particle or particles added:

चढ , *tṣəḍhə* , verbal base, realised as *tṣəḍh*

चढत , *tṣəḍhətə* , base with त added, realised as *tṣəḍhet*

चढतच , *tṣəḍhetətṣə* , base with त , and emphatic particle, च realised as *tṣəḍh'təṭṣə* .

Reading examples.<sup>2</sup>

1. One character words. Four of the *vergīy* characters occur as words: न ग च ढ

1. See below, in this chapter, 2.11.

2. For transcription of examples, see page 130. The alveolar realisation of *cə-veg* characters is indicated by an asterisk.

2. Two character words; final characters realised with zero-vowel.

जग	पद	खण	बध	मन	ठग	खत	पड	थम
छत	नथ	ठग	कण	डफ	भट	*चख	*जण	*झट

3. Three character words; final characters realised with zero-vowel.

मदत	पकड	घटक	भजन	थकत	ठणक	फबत
धमक	खडक	*चठण	*जखम	*पचत	*जपत	*झगड

4. Four character words; second characters realised with zero-vowel, or with an ə-glide, final characters with zero-vowel.

खटपट	धमकट	गडबड	मणगट	थबकट	खणकट
फटकन्	*चमकत	*टचकण	*दचकत	*कचकट	*झटकन्

ii. Characters of the əntəsth group.<sup>1</sup>

The characters of this group given in the Sanskrit section are written in the Hindi style. The Marathi characters are:

य	र	ल	व
yə	rə	lə	və

When the characters य and व occur initially, or medially realised with a following vowel, they are realised as consonants. When they occur medially in positions in which əkar consonant characters are realised with zero-vowel, or finally, they are realised as semi-vowels, forming a diphthong with the vowel of the preceding syllable. Examples:

यवन	वर	भय	लव	लवकर
yəven	ver	bhey	ləv	ləv'kər

1. See Sanskrit, Ch.2,1.ii.



Reading examples<sup>1</sup>

1. One character word. व is the only character in this group which occurs as a word.
2. Two character words; final characters realised with zero-vowel.  
 कर जल वर वन जय थर वय घर लठ लय  
 धर कल लठ भर दर लव \*चर \*चल \*जर \*चव
3. Three character words; final characters realised with zero-vowel.  
 बदल धरण चलन गवत तनय वचन कणव रयत  
 तलफ ठकल वरव \*चरत \*नजर \*गरज \*मजल \*वजन
4. Four and five character words. Second character in four character words, or third character in five character words, realised with zero-vowel or with an e-glide; final characters realised with zero-vowel.  
 लवकर कसमत परकर टरफल धनगर करवत  
 पलटण \*कचरत पकडवत \*चरबट \*करमतच

iii. Characters of the uṣm group.<sup>2</sup>

The characters of this group given in the Sanskrit section are written in the Hindi style. The Marathi characters are:

श	ष	स	and	ह
ʃə	ʃə	sə		he

The character ष occurs only in Sanskrit loanwords, and when reading words in common use in Marathi, it is often realised as ʃə, except in formal reading. Final ह is usually realised with ə.

1. For transcription, see p.130.  
 2. See Sanskrit, Ch.2,1.iii.

Reading examples<sup>1</sup>

1. None of the characters of this group occurs as a word.
2. Two character words; final characters realised with zero-vowel, or, in the last three words, with ə .

सर बस यश हट हर सण शक शव फस  
हस षट् खस वश शर रस शह तह सह

3. Three character words; final characters realised with zero-vowel.

फणस पसर शपथ सडक समय हरण सरस कलश  
शहर बसव सरक दशक \*हजर लहर \*सहज फसल

4. Four and five character words. Second characters, or characters indicated by numbers in brackets, realised with zero-vowel or with and ə-glide; final characters realised with zero-vowel.

हरकत ह्यगय सरवट शतपट सरपण मसलत  
हनवट सरसकट [2] मसणवट [3] समजतच [3]

The last consonant character in the Marathi syllabary is

ळ , -[ə , realised as a retroflex lateral consonant with ə .<sup>2</sup>

Examples of words written with this character:<sup>3</sup>

छळ फळ खळ सरळ \*जवळ हळद वळण ठवळ  
पळस \*चळवळ बळकट \*मजजवळ (2) कळमळत (2) \*जवळसर (3)

The two characters क्ष and ज्ञ are often added after ळ in the Marathi syllabary, but these characters, representing syllables consisting of two consecutive consonants with the vowel ə , do not properly belong to the syllabary, and are discussed later.<sup>4</sup>

1. For transcription, see page 130.

2. See Sanskrit, Ch.2,1.iii, Vedic character.

3. For transcription, see page 130. əkar consonant characters realised as shown in previous examples.

4. See below, Ch.3. Conjunct Characters, Classes 2. and 4.



## 2. Vowel Characters and Vowel Signs<sup>1</sup>.

### 1. Vowel Characters.

The vowel characters used in writing Marathi are the same as the Sanskrit characters, using the Bombay forms where these differ from the Hindi forms, and omitting syllabic rr , l and ll<sup>2</sup>. The vowel characters are usually placed first in the varṇamala. The calligraphy of the vowel characters is illustrated in the Sanskrit section.

The Marathi vowel characters are:

अ	आ	इ	ई	उ	ऊ	ए	ऐ	ओ	औ
a	ā	i	ī	u	ū	e	ē	o	ō

The character ऋ , syllabic r , occurs only in a few Sanskrit loanwords, used mainly in the literary language. The vowel characters are referred to as akar , ikar , ukar , and so on.

In all reading examples which follow, ekar consonant characters which occur in words having vowel characters or vowel signs should be realised according to the general rules already given, unless special notes are added.

Reading examples<sup>3</sup>.

1. Vowel characters only. आ ए ओ आई

2. Vowel characters with ekar consonant characters.

अड	आण	आठ	ईद	ऊठ	एक	ऐक	ओठ	औट
ऊन	पेट	ईड	ऊस	ओळ	ऐन	औत	पेश	ऋण
सई	मऊ	*जई	नऊ	इतर	उसळ	ओळख	उतर	उखळ
आपण	*ऐवज	उडत	ऐरण	सळई	ओझर	औषध	ओळख	

1. The use of vowel characters and vowel signs is explained in the Sanskrit section, Ch.2,2.1. 2. ibid. 2.2.1.

3. For transcription, see p.130.



ii. Vowel Signs.

Vowel signs corresponding to each vowel character, except अ , are added to the akar form of consonant characters to represent syllables consisting of an initial consonant followed by one of the vowels a to eṽ . The vowel signs are shown here added to the consonant character क . The order of strokes in writing characters with vowel signs, and special forms, are given in the Sanskrit section<sup>1</sup>.

का	कि	की	कु	कू	कृ	के	कै	को	कौ
ka	ki	kii	ku	kuu	kr	ke	keṽ	ko	keṽ

In the teaching of writing in schools, the upright stroke of आ , ओ and औ , and of the corresponding vowel signs, as in का , को and कौ , is referred to as काना (kana). This term is also used in referring to the upright stroke in any character. The diagonal superscribed strokes in the characters ए , ओ and औ , and of the vowel signs in के , कै , को and कौ , are referred to as

मात्रा (matra). The signs of the vowels इ and ई are referred to as वेलांटी (velaṅtii), the sign in कि being डावी वेलांटी (ḍavii velaṅtii, 'left velaṅtii') and the sign in की being उजवी वेलांटी (ujavii velaṅtii, 'right velaṅtii'). All the vowel signs are referred to as खूण (khuuṇ, plural khuṇa).

In some modern Marathi publications new forms of some of the vowel characters are being used, formed by writing the vowel signs with the character अ , thus:

अि	अी	अु	अू	अृ	अे	अै
i	ii	u	uu	r	e	eṽ

1. See Sanskrit, Ch.2,2.ii. Calligraphy.

Reading examples<sup>1</sup>

## 1. One character words.

खा ही तो ने पै धू छि भी गा घे थू हो

## 2. Two character words.

ठीक रूठ झील तेल \*मौज दोष दृढ बैल हित दूध  
काय होय नाव जेव कवि खडू शेव बहु नये बरी  
डोळ्या पैसा कृपा धोबी शिशु छाती भीति गुरु \*चौदा  
बाई भाऊ ऋषि सुई एके येई ऋतु एके ओळी

## 3. Three character words.

मैदान रुमाल ठेवीन जेवून कौतुक नोकर बेडूक गरूड  
कठोर जीवन \*जमीन देऊळ पाऊस लढाई \*तराजू \*चुइटी  
वगैरे \*चौपाटी पाहिजे मराठी टिकाऊ बैरागी भिकारी  
अितर अेक अैकिला अुतर अूठ अेअीन आओ धुअून

Realisation of medial *ekar* characters in words which have characters with vowel signs in various positions.<sup>2</sup>

- a. When a medial *ekar* character, in a three character word, precedes a final character with a vowel sign, it is usually realised with zero-vowel, or with an *ə*-glide, and य and व form diphthongs with the vowel of the preceding characters, as in

आणखी	रेशमी	मुलगा	कायदा	बावडी
aŋ'khii	reʃ'mii	mul'ga	kay'da	bav'dii
शेगडी	भाकरी	छकडा	अठरा	कोयता
ʃeg'dii	bhak'rii	chək'da	əth'ra	koy'ta

1. For transcription of examples see p.130.

2. Compare these notes with notes b. and c. above in this chapter.



The realisation of *ekar* consonant characters in words of four or more characters is illustrated in the examples given below. The realisation varies according to the position in each word of the characters with vowel signs, and a knowledge of the language is the only reliable guide to the realisation of such words.

Second character realised with zero-vowel, or with an *ə*-glide:

शेतकरी	भानगड	वेलदोडा	सडपातळ
ʃet'kerii	bhan'gəḍ	vel'doḍa	səḍ'patəḷ

Third character realised with zero-vowel, or with an *ə*-glide:

ताबडतोब	मोबदला	भातुकली
tabəḍ'tob	mobəd'la	bhatuk'lii

Other characters realised with zero-vowel, or with an *ə*-glide:

पलिकडचा	परवानगी	समजूतदार
pəlikəḍ'tʃa	pər'van'gii	səm'zuut'dar

- b. When a suffix consisting of, or beginning with, a character with a vowel sign is added to a verbal base ending in an *ekar* consonant character, this final character is realised with zero-vowel, or with an *ə*-glide, as in these examples:

बस	बसत	बसतो	वाट	वाटत	वाटतात
bəs	bəsət	bəs-to	vaṭ	vaṭət	vaṭ-tat

When such suffixes are added to verbal bases of three or more characters of which the final and prefinal are *ekar* consonant characters, the realisation of *ekar* characters varies in the way illustrated by the examples given below.

Verbal base of three characters:

समज	समजा	समजत	समजतो	समजतील
səməz	səm'za	səm'zet	səməz-to	səməz-til



Verbal base of four characters, second, third and fourth əkar:

विरघळ	विरघळून	विरघळत	विरघळला
vir'ghəɭ	vir'ghəɭuun	vir'ghəɭət	vir'ghəɭ-la

Reading examples<sup>1</sup>

1. Realisation of əkar consonant characters as in note a. above.

खिडकी कोरडा दुसरा कपडे इकडे टेकडी कुणबी  
 \*चौकशी. कोयता गुडघे अवघा पारधी पवठा बातमी  
 \*टरबूज केरसुणी \*फौजदार शिकवण उबदार \*नुकताच  
 स्वबरदार फसवणूक हातउसना सोडवणूक लहानपणा

2. Realisation of əkar consonant characters as in note b. above.

कळत कळतो पसरा पसरतात सरकून सरकतील  
 घसर घसरून घसरील घसरशील आठवून आठवतील  
 बिघड बिघडून बिघडलेला अडखळत अडखळतात

Realisation of characters of the ca-verg with vowel signs.<sup>2</sup>

The three characters च , ज and झ , are always realised as palatal consonants when they are written with the vowel signs of i or ii , or with any vowel sign in Sanskrit loanwords. They are realised more frequently as alveolar consonants when written with other vowel signs. When written with the vowel sign of e , the alveolar or palatal realisation may vary from time to time and from district to district. The realisation of these characters as alveolar or as palatal consonants in various contexts is illustrated by the examples given below, but the only reliable guide for reading the majority of

1. For transcription, see p.131.

2. See above, note on the vergiyy characters, in 1.i.

words in which these characters occur is a knowledge of the language.

a. Palatal realisation with the vowel signs of i , ii:

चिकट	चीड	भाची	जी	भाजी	माझी
cikəʈ	ciɪɖ	bhacii	jii	bhajii	majhii

b. Palatal realisation in Sanskrit and Hindi loanwords, and others, with the remaining vowel signs:

वाचन	नीच	चलन	चैन	चहा	चार	चेहरा	चूप
vacən	niic	celən	caɪn	caha	car	cehəra	cuup
कचोरा	जन	मजा	उजेड	जुवा	जेवण	झेला	
kəcora	jən	meja	ujed	juva	jevaŋ	jhela	

c. Alveolar realisation of these characters, əkar, or with any vowel sign except those of i , ii or aɪ :

चटणी	चार	चमचा	चूक	तिचे	चोर	चौक
tʃəʈ'ɳii	tʃar	tʃəm'tʃa	tʃuuk	titʃe	tʃor	tʃəʊk
जण	वजन	समज	जागा	बाजू	वाजेल	जोर
ʒəŋ	vəʒən	səməʒ	ʒaga	bazuu	vazel	zor
झटकण	झाड	झुडूप	माझे	झोप		
ʒəʈ'kəŋ	ʒaɖ	ʒuɖuup	mazhe	zhop		

The emphatic particle च , written as the final character of a word, is always realised as an alveolar consonant. The words चीज and झीज are realised respectively as ciiz and jhiiz

The vowel characters ह and उ ('short' vowels) and ई and ऊ ('long' vowels), and the corresponding vowel signs, are written in Marathi words according to certain rules of orthography. These rules include reference to the orthography of the modifier known as



the anusvar<sup>1</sup>, and are therefore given in the full statement of Marathi rules of orthography, after the modifiers have been discussed.

### 3. Modifiers.

Both the modifiers occurring in Sanskrit are used in writing Marathi, though the realisation of them differs from the realisation in reading Sanskrit.

#### 1. anusvar.<sup>2</sup>

The anusvar is always written in Marathi in the form of a dot placed above a character, thus:

अं	आं	इं	ईं	उं	एं	ओं
əṁ	aṁ	iṁ	iṁ	uṁ	eṁ	oṁ
कं	कां	किं	कीं	कुं	कें	कों
kəṁ	kaṁ	kiṁ	kiṁ	kuṁ	keṁ	koṁ

The anusvar is written to the right side of a superscribed vowel sign. The order of strokes in writing characters with vowel signs and the anusvar is given in the notes on calligraphy in the Sanskrit section.

The anusvar is realised in Marathi as follows:

- a. The anusvar, originally a mark indicating nasalisation of a vowel, is still written in many Marathi words in which the vowels are not nasalised in standard modern speech. The anusvar in such words is disregarded in reading, though it is still written either to show the etymology of a word, to preserve a distinction of meaning in pairs of words in which one has a vowel which was originally nasalised, or to express grammatical relationships. Characters

1. See below. 3.1.

2. See Sanskrit, Ch. 2.3.1.



written with the anusvar are, however, still realised with nasalisation of the vowel in Konkani speech<sup>1</sup>. The following examples illustrate some of the contexts in which the anusvar is written but not realised in reading.

Words:

तू	तों	कीं	कांहीं	दांत	गहू	पोंच
tuu	to	kii	kahii	dat	gəhuu	poṭṣ

Pairs of words:

नाव	नांव	पाच	पांच
nav <sup>2</sup>	nav <sup>3</sup>	paṭṣ <sup>4</sup>	paṭṣ <sup>5</sup>

Grammatical forms:

Grammatical forms:					
हे	तीं	बसतो	बोलते	करू	
he	tii	bəs-to	bol-te	kər-uu	
येतां	बागेत	मुलानें	मुलांनीं	मुलाशीं	घरीं
ye-ta	baḡet	mulane	mulanii	mulajii	gherii

An anusvar placed on a final character is never realised, except in certain contexts in modern Marathi writing in which adaptations of the script are made in order to represent colloquial forms of speech, as in drama and dialogue<sup>6</sup>.

- b. In many words, including most Sanskrit loanwords, the anusvar written on a character preceding one of the vergiyy characters is realised as the nasal consonant of the same class as the consonant represented by the following character, or as n before a character of the cə-verg. When the anusvar is realised as a nasal consonant before a final əkar consonant character,

1. The variety of Marathi speech known as 'Konkani standard' is spoken on the coastal strip south of Bombay, the Konkan (kɔŋkən).  
 2. 'boat'. 3. 'name'. 4. 'emerald'. 5. 'five'.  
 6. See below, Marathi rules of orthography.  
 7. See Sanskrit, Ch. 2, 3. i. note b.

the final character is realised with an a-glide<sup>1</sup>. This realisation of the anusvar is illustrated by the following examples:

रंग	उंच	अंजीर	उंट	भित	शिंपी	थेंब
reng	untə	ənjiir	unt	bhint	ʃimpīi	themb

As in Sanskrit, there is an alternative method of representing nasal consonants preceding verglii characters. This method is described later, in the discussion of conjunct characters<sup>2</sup>.

When suffixes are added to plural nouns and pronouns, the anusvar is written on the character preceding the suffix. This anusvar is realised as n before the various forms of the suffix चा, and often realised before the suffixes ना, नीं and शीं ; e.g.

त्यांचा	त्यांची	त्यांना	त्यांनीं	त्यांशीं
tyan-ṭṣa <sup>3</sup>	tyan-cīi	tyan-na	tyan-nīi	tyan-ṣīi

- c. When the anusvar is written on a character preceding one of the antasth or uṣm characters, as in Sanskrit loanwords, mostly learned words used in the literary language, it is realised in various ways. Among the ways of realising the anusvar in such words, given in the Sanskrit section<sup>4</sup>, the usual Marathi practice is illustrated by the following examples:

anusvar before य, realised as ŷ, as in संयोग saṃyog

anusvar before ल, realised as l̥, as in संलग्न saṃleṅn<sup>5</sup>

anusvar before other antasth and uṣm characters, realised as v̄.

e.g. संरक्षण	किंवा	अंश	अहिंसा	मांस	सिंह
saṃrakṣaṇ <sup>6</sup>	kiṽva	aṽʃ	aḥiṽsa	maṽs	siṽh

1. See below, Ch.3,2. 2. Ibid., 3. Class 11. 3. The first character in these words is त् combined with य. See Ch.3,3.Cl.3.  
4. See Sanskrit, Ch.2,3.1.note c. 5. The last character in this word is ग combined with न. See Ch.3,3.Cl.2.iii. 6. The character क्ष represents क् combined with ष. See Ch.3,3.Cl.4.1.b.



In some eighteenth century manuscripts the character **व्** is inserted between the character with the anusvar and a following antesth or uugm character, forming a conjunct character with it; e.g. **संवहार** , **saṁhar** , **सिंह** , **siṁh** , **संरक्षण** , **saṁrakṣaṇ** .

- d. The anusvar is realised as nasalisation of a vowel in a few exclamations; e.g. **अं** , **ॐ** , **ऊं** , **ūu** ; and in the number word **पैंशी** , **ṣy̐ṣi**.

#### 11. visarg.

This modifier is described in the Sanskrit section<sup>1</sup>. It is rarely used in writing Marathi. It occurs in a few Sanskrit loanwords, and is sometimes written with exclamations, to indicate prolongation or stress. When it is written with the final character in Sanskrit loanwords, it is realised as **h** followed by the vowel **a** , as in these words: **पुनः** , **punha** , **स्वतः** , **svateha**<sup>2</sup> , **विशेषतः** , **vifeṣ'teḥa** .

When the visarg occurs medially in a word, it is realised either as the doubling of the consonant of the character which follows it, or as aspiration after the vowel of the character with which it is written; e.g. **दुःख** , **dukkh** , **अंतःकरण** , **aṁtəḥkeraṇ** .

When the visarg is written after exclamations, it usually represents a prolongation of the vowel, or aspiration after the vowel, as in these words: **ऊं** , **ūu...** , or **ūuh** ; **छे** , **cheh** ; **वाः** , **vah** .

1. See Sanskrit, Ch.2,3.11. 2. The first character in this word is **स्** combined with **व्** . See Ch.2,3.Cl.3.11.



#### 4. The Complete Syllabary.

The arrangement of the characters of the Marathi syllabary in the traditional order is similar to that given in the Sanskrit section,<sup>1</sup> omitting the vowel characters ऋ , ॠ and ॡ , and using only the 'Bombay' forms. The table in which the vowel characters (except ऋ ), and the modifiers added to the character अ , are placed at the head of a series of columns consisting of every consonant character in the akar form, with each of the vowel signs and each of the modifiers, is called in Marathi the बाराखडी , barakhēḍī, the 'twelve characters'. This table is often recited in schools by children learning to read.

These two tables show the order in which the characters are placed as initial characters of words in dictionaries, which is the same as the order in Sanskrit, except that no special place is given to characters with the anusvar. This difference in order is illustrated by the following series:

Sanskrit: a ai amya amṣa amḥa akā akḥa ..

Marathi: a ai akā amḥa akḥa amḥā ... aya mya mṣa ..

#### 5. Numerals.

The numerals used in Marathi are the 'Bombay' forms given in the Sanskrit section.<sup>2</sup>

#### 6. Punctuation.

In prose writing, the same system of punctuation is used as in English prose. The system used in Marathi verse is the same as the Sanskrit system.<sup>3</sup>

1. See Sanskrit, Ch.2,4.

2. ibid.,5.

3. ibid.,6.

Rules of Marathi Orthography.

The rules of Marathi orthography concern the writing of the vowels इ and उ (ह्रस्व, hr̥asv, or 'short' vowels) and ई and ऊ (दीर्घ, diirgh, or 'long' vowels)<sup>1</sup>; and the writing of the anusvar in certain words and in grammatical forms. Some of the traditional rules are being modified in modern Marathi writing, new rules having been prescribed in 1932 by the Maharashtra Literature Society (महाराष्ट्र साहित्य परिषद्, mēharaṣṭre sahit̥ye per̥ṣad). Some of these rules have become widely accepted. The rules given below are stated first in terms of 'standard' orthography, followed by the modifications recommended by the Maharashtra Literature Society.

1. Rules concerning the writing of इ, ई and उ, ऊ<sup>2</sup>.

a. The 'long' vowel characters and vowel signs are written in a final position; e.g.

बाई baii माळी maḷii

भाऊ bhauu चाकू tsakuu

Exceptions: आणि aṇi, and some Sanskrit loanwords,

such as कवि kavi गुरु guru

The vowels of the 'crude form' of nouns follow this rule regarding 'final' characters before the addition of suffixes; e.g.

मुलीला mulii-la कवीचा kevii-t̥ṣa गुरूने̎ guruu-ne

Pronouns are written with the 'short' vowels: तिला tila, तुला tula

b. The 'long' vowel characters and vowel signs are written in a medial position immediately before a final ekar consonant character; e.g.

ठीक ṭiik जाईल zaiil मूल muul घेऊन gheun

1. See above, Ch.1.

2. These rules apply to the vowel signs corresponding with the vowel characters.



Exceptions: The 'short' vowels are written in some Sanskrit loanwords, e.g. हित , hit , पुरुष , puruṣ ; when they occur with the anusvar before a final ekar consonant character, as in भिंत , bhint, उंच , unṭṣ ; or when they occur before a final conjunct character<sup>1</sup>, as in चित्र , citr<sup>2</sup>, मनुष्य manuṣy<sup>3</sup>. The Sanskrit orthography is preserved in Sanskrit loanwords such as मूर्ख , muurkh<sup>4</sup>, and तीव्र , tiivr<sup>2</sup>.

- c. In all other positions, or followed by any final character except an ekar consonant character, the 'short' vowels are written; e.g.

किती      तिकडे      तुकडा      विहीर      विहिरी-  
kitii      tik'de      tuk'da      vihiir (crude form, vihiriī-)

Exceptions: Some Sanskrit loanwords, e.g. पूजा , puuja, भीति bhiiti.

- ii. Rules concerning the anusvar written in grammatical forms.<sup>5</sup>

- a. All neuter forms, singular and plural, ending in ए , ई or ऊ , are written with the anusvar on these final vowels; e.g.

हे      तीं      लुगडीं      करडू      मुलें      भाडें  
he      tii      lug'dii      kər'duu      mule      bhaṇḍe  
मोठें      थोडीं      पडतें      झालें      कलीं      यावें  
moṭhe      thoḍii      pəḍ-te      zhale      keliī      yave

Exceptions: लोणी , loṇii and पाणी , paṇii . The word गहू , gəhuu , is masculine plural.

In modern Marathi speech, the vowel ए , in the neuter forms of words, is often realised as e , in informal speech. This change of spoken form is often represented by writing the anusvar alone,

1. See below, Ch.3.      2. ibid.      3. Class 3.iii.b.      3. ibid. Class 3.i.  
4. ibid. Class 3.iii.a.      5. The anusvar in not usually realised in grammatical forms, except in the context given below in b.



as, for instance, in the dialogue of novels or dramas; e.g.

झालें	झालं	भाडें	भाडं	बरें	बरं
zhale	zhale	bhaṇḍe	bhaṇḍe	bere	bere

- b. The anusvar is written on the character which has the vowel of the 'crude form' of words to which the suffix त<sup>1</sup> is added, in the singular, and before all suffixes in the plural, e.g.

घरांत	बागेंत	खोलींत	माणसांहून	मुलांनीं
ghera-t	bage-t	khooli-t	maṇ'sa-huun	mula-nii

The anusvar written on the character representing the 'crude form' of words before the addition of the suffix चा is always realised as n, and often before other suffixes<sup>2</sup>.

- c. The anusvar is written on the characters representing certain suffixes; e.g. नें, नीं, शीं, ई and आं; and on the final character of particles ending in आ, ई, ऊ and ए; e.g. मार्गे mage, पुढें puḍhe, खालीं khaliī, आतां ata.

Exception: कडे kade

Suffixes and particles ending in a character with the vowel sign of ऐ are often spoken in modern Marathi with final e. When these forms occur in the dialogue of dramas or novels, the final character is often written with the anusvar alone, omitting the matra, as in पुढें, puḍhe, पुढं, puḍhe, मार्गे, mage, मार्ग, mage. This use of the anusvar to represent the forms of colloquial speech is sometimes extended to the particle कडे, and to some particles in ऊन; e.g. कडं kade, पासून, pasuun, पासनं pas'ne, तिकडून, tik'duun, तिकडनं, tiked'ne.

1. The mark of nasalisation is part of the suffix, which represents the word आंत, āt. The initial vowel of this word coalesces with the vowel of the crude form of the noun to which it is added as a suffix.

2. See above, 3. Modifiers, i.b.

- d. The anusvar is written on certain suffixes added to verbal bases:

1st. person singular and plural:

तों -to तें -te ई -ii ए -e ऊं -uu लों -lo लें -le

and the verbal forms आहे , ahe , आहे , aho and नाहीं nahii

2nd. person plural: तां , ta , आं , a , and लां , la

and the verbal forms आहां , aha , and नाहीं , nahii

3rd. person singular and plural: नाहीं nahii and नाहींत nahiit

and all neuter forms which change in the same way as variable adjectives.

Suffixes which are added to form verbal particles:

तां , ta , ताना , tana , ऊं , uu , and णें , ṇe (sometimes written in dialogue as णं and realised as ṇe )

- e. The anusvar is written on certain forms of the personal pronouns, when they stand in the same grammatical relationship to other words as nouns and pronouns with the addition of the suffixes

नें and नीं . e.g. मीं , miī आम्हीं , amhīī<sup>1</sup> तुम्हीं , tumhīī<sup>1</sup>, कोणीं , koṇīī .

---

1. The character म्ह represents mha .



Rules of Orthography of the Maharashtra Literature Society.

The modification of the rules of standard orthography recommended by the Maharashtra Literature Society are mainly concerned with the writing of the anusvar. The rules are stated in the Society's pamphlet **शुद्धलेखनाचे नवे नियम** (śuddhalekhanatṣe neve niyam) published in Poona in 1936. The most important modifications of the standard rules given above are these:

- a. If the anusvar usually written on certain words (that is, not suffixes or particles) is not realised in modern Marathi speech, it should not be written, unless it is considered important to show the etymology of the word, or unless it is the only means of distinguishing in meaning between pairs of words, as given above in 3.1.note a.
- b. The anusvar usually written on the suffixes **नें** and **नीं**, and on the particles given above in rule 11.c. should be omitted. e.g.

मुलाने	मुलांनी	खाली	मागे	आता
mulane	mulanii	khalii	mage	ata

The anusvar is, however, still written to represent colloquial forms such as those given above in 11.a. and c.

- c. The anusvar usually written on the word **नाहीं**, nahii, should be written only when this verbal form refers to the first person, singular or plural, and the second person plural; and the anusvar on the plural form **नाहींत**, nahiit, should be omitted.
- d. The anusvar written on the final character of the word **कांहीं**, kahii, should be omitted, **कांही**.



## CHAPTER 3

### CONJUNCT CHARACTERS

Consonant characters may be combined to represent two or more consonants which are to be realised without an intervening vowel. Characters formed in this way are called संयुक्ताक्षर (saṃyuktakṣar) by Marathi grammarians, or जोडाक्षर (zodakṣar) in the teaching of writing in schools. The construction and calligraphy of conjunct characters is described in the Sanskrit section<sup>1</sup>, but the style used in writing Marathi corresponds, in the conjunct characters, with the style of the Bombay characters given in the tables in this section<sup>2</sup>. The Marathi conjunct characters are discussed in this chapter in the same classes as the Sanskrit conjunct characters.<sup>3</sup>

#### 1. Contexts of Conjunct Characters in Marathi.

Conjunct characters occur in Marathi in these contexts:

1. In Marathi words, that is, words not borrowed from Sanskrit or from the modern languages; e.g.

ढब्बू  
ḡhəbbuu

घड्याळ  
ghəḡyaḡ

व्हावा  
vhava

- ii. In Sanskrit loanwords, either words used commonly in Marathi, or learned words used only in the literary language; e.g.

पुस्तक  
pustək

पत्र  
pətr

ईश्वर  
iiḡver

---

1. See Sanskrit, Ch.3,1.  
3. See Sanskrit, Ch.3,3.

2. See above, Ch.2.1 - iii.

111. In loanwords from other languages; e.g.

रस्ता

resta

कोर्ट

kōrt

स्टेशन

sṭeʃən

## 2. Realisation of Conjunct Characters in Marathi.

Conjunct characters are realised in reading as syllables consisting of two or more consonants followed by a vowel. When an əkar conjunct character occurs as the final character of a word, it is usually realised with an ə-glide, as in फक्त , phakt', शास्त्र jastr'.<sup>1</sup>

The realisation in modern Marathi of əkar characters with zero-vowel in certain positions in words gives rise to a problem of spelling.<sup>2</sup> For instance, when a formative particle beginning with a consonant character is added to a verbal base ending in a final əkar consonant character, the final character of the base is usually realised with zero-vowel. This realisation of the consecutive characters is similar to the realisation of a conjunct character. Similar problems arise in other contexts, where an əkar consonant character is realised with zero-vowel before a following consonant character, and in compound words in which the first part ends in an əkar consonant character, and the second part begins with a consonant character. Examples of such words are given below with each class of conjunct characters.

## 3. Classes of Conjunct Characters in Marathi.

Conjunct characters of all the classes given in the Sanskrit section<sup>3</sup> occur in Marathi, but in some of the classes only a few of the characters occur. Those which are used in writing Marathi are

1. This glide is not represented in transcribing words to which this rule applies.

2. See Ch.2,1. notes a. and b.

3. See Sanskrit, Ch.3,3.



shown by examples given in each class, which include some Sanskrit loanwords frequently used in Marathi. More rarely used loanwords, which may occur in literary Marathi, are included among the examples given with each class in the Sanskrit section.

Class 1. Two similar characters joined.

The series of characters of this class occurring in Sanskrit is given in the Sanskrit section<sup>1</sup>. Most of the consonant characters of the Marathi syllabary occur in this class. The character representing -rrə is written र्र , the superscribed stroke representing r preceding another consonant<sup>2</sup>.

A character representing an aspirated consonant is not usually written as the first part of a conjunct character in this class; but in Marathi writing the characters र्रख , khkhə and ठ्ठ , ṭhṭhə are sometimes used. The combinations -nnə and -mmə are represented in some words by writing the anusvar over the character preceding न or म . e.g.

संमति or सम्मति	गंमत	संनिधि or सन्निधि	अन्न
səmməti	but gəmmet	sənnidhi	but ənn

The following examples illustrate Marathi words in which consecutive consonant characters, the first being əkar, are realised in ordinary speech in the same way as conjunct characters:

आण्णा	आण्णे	किळा	बोलला	डग्गा	आगगाडी
aṇṇa	aṇ-ṇe <sup>3</sup>	killā	bol-lā <sup>3</sup>	ḍəgga	ag'gadī <sup>4</sup>

1. See Sanskrit, Ch. 3, Conjunct Characters, Class 1.

2. See below, Class 3.iii.a.

3. Verbal forms.

4. Compound word.



Reading examples<sup>1</sup>.

फिक्का अक्कल सक्खी डग्गा कच्चा गच्ची इच्छा लज्जा  
हट्टी लट्ट चिट्ठी खड्डा झाण्णव पत्ता उत्थान र्दी बुद्धि  
अन्न छप्पन्न लप्फा ढब्ब हिम्या किर् हल्ली सग्गा इश्श हिस्सा

Class 2. Two vergiily characters joined.

The full series of conjunct characters in this class which occur in Sanskrit is given in the Sanskrit section<sup>2</sup>. The characters of this class which occur in Marathi, mostly in Sanskrit loanwords, are given below. Some of the examples given in the Sanskrit section may occur as loanwords in Marathi literary texts.

i.

क्त	त्क	ग्द	ङ्ग	ग्ध	द्ध
-kte	-tke	-gde	-dge	-gdhe	-dghe
त्प	प्त	द्द	ब्द	ब्ज	
-tpe	-pte	-dbe	-bde	-bje	

ii. Most of the characters given under ii.a. in the Sanskrit section occur in literary Marathi, representing homorganic nasal consonants; but the method of representing these consonants by writing the anusvar on the preceding character is more often used.<sup>3</sup>

The word देहान्त, dehant, 'death', a learned Sanskrit loanword, is written with the conjunct character, which distinguishes it from the word with a Marathi suffix, देहांत, dehat, 'in the body'. Among the characters given in the Sanskrit section under ii.b. only झ, jhe, and ञ, -tne occur in Marathi. झ is not

1. For transcription, see p.131. 2. See Sanskrit, Ch.3,3.C1.2. The numbers i. - iv. correspond with the arrangement of these characters in the Sanskrit section. 3. See above, Ch.2,3.1. anusvar.

calligraphically a conjunct character, and it is often included in the vernemala. Words beginning with झ are usually placed last in Marathi dictionaries.

iii. These characters occur in Sanskrit loanwords:

कम	ग	घ	तम	द	प्र
-kme	-gne	-ghne	-tme	-dme	-pne

iv. Only two characters of this group occur in Marathi, in Sanskrit loanwords: झ , -gme and न्म , -nme .

The examples given below illustrate words in which consecutive consonant characters, the first being akar, are realised in ordinary speech in the same way as conjunct characters:

शक्ति	शक्ती	गुप्त	कापतो	शब्द	उद्धार
ʃakti	ʃək-tii <sup>1</sup>	gupt	kap-to <sup>1</sup>	ʃəbd	ub'dar

Reading examples<sup>2</sup>

युक्ति	चमत्कार	सद्गुण	उपोद्घात	मुग्ध	षट्कोण	उत्पन्न
शब्द	गुप्त	सत्फल	समाप्त	उद्भव	उद्बोधक	फक्त
लक्ष	आत्मा	पद्मा	रत्न	ज्ञान	जन्म	वाङ्मय

### Class 3. Characters joined with antesth characters.

1. Characters joined with following य .

The series of characters in this class is given in the Sanskrit section<sup>3</sup>. All the consonant characters of the Marathi syllabary, except ह , ण and झ , ण , occur in this class, though some occur only in Sanskrit loanwords. Many of these characters occur in Marathi

1. Verbal forms.

2. For transcription of examples, see p.131.

3. See Sanskrit, Ch.3,3.C1.3.1.



as a result of certain grammatical processes. English loanwords are sometimes written with characters joined with य , to represent the vowel sound in words such as बँक , 'bank' and कॅप 'camp'.

Reading examples<sup>1</sup>

वाक्य	डोक्याला	संख्या	आग्या	च्या	तिच्या
राज्य	ज्याने	तुझ्या	पेट्या	मोठ्याने	चिठ्या
गाड्या	पेट्याचा*	होण्यास	आण्याचे*	त्याच्या	
पोथ्या	उद्यां	मध्ये	न्याहाळणे	प्याला	नफ्याचा*
धोब्याने	अभ्यास	भ्याला	रम्य	सूर्य	खोल्या
कराव्यास	व्याख्यान	अवश्य	रहस्य	मनुष्य	
ह्याला	माळ्याने	आत्म्याचा*	मुख्य	नद्या	

ii. Characters joined with following व .

Only a few of the conjunct characters in this series, given in the Sanskrit section<sup>2</sup>, occur in Marathi, most of which occur in loanwords. The characters which occur in Marathi words, and in some loanwords in common use, are illustrated in the examples given below. Marathi words are written with व्ह , Sanskrit loanwords with ह .

The realisation of a final ekar consonant character in some words which form compounds with the words वाला , vala , or वार , var , illustrates the realisation of consecutive consonant characters, when the first is ekar, in the same way as conjunct characters.

For example:

पक्कान्न	but	डाकवाला	ध्वनि	but	बुधवार
ṭṭṭṭṭṭ		ḍak'vala	dhvṇi		budh'var

1. For transcription, see p.131.

2. See Sanskrit, Ch.3,3.Class 3.ii.



Reading examples<sup>1</sup>

कचित् ग्वाही उच्छ्वास ज्वाला विश्वास स्वतः  
ईश्वर स्वच्छ स्वप्न द्वारा सरस्वती केवहां वहावा  
तत्त्वज्ञान महत्त्व अन्वय सर्व ध्वजा वहाळ इवास

iii. Characters joined with preceding र्, or with following र् .

a. र्, preceding another character.

. The characters in this series are given in the Sanskrit section<sup>2</sup>.

These conjunct characters are formed by placing the stroke called रेफ , reph , above the character before which र्, is to be realised as the first of two or more consecutive consonants. The place of this stroke on the various characters, whether skar or with vowel signs, is given in the notes on calligraphy in the Sanskrit section. These characters occur in Marathi words, in Sanskrit loanwords, and in loanwords from other languages. Characters are not usually doubled when written with reph in Marathi words, though in the writing of Sanskrit doubling may sometimes occur. The characters which occur in Marathi are illustrated in the reading examples given below.

The following examples illustrate the realisation of र्, with zero-vowel, followed by another consonant character, similar to the realisation of reph written above a consonant character:

कर्ता	करता	अर्पण	सरपण	तर्क	परकर
karta	kar-ta <sup>3</sup>	arpen	sar'pen	terk	per'ker

1. For transcription, see p.131.

2. See Sanskrit, Ch.3.3., Class 3.iii.a.

3. Verbal form.

A special form of reph is written to represent र्, preceding य or ह in Marathi words. This form of reph is sometimes written with ह in Sanskrit loanwords, but it is not usual to write this form in a Sanskrit text<sup>1</sup>. The following examples illustrate reph written in this form with ह :

त-हा	क-हाडा	गि-हाईक	ज-हस्व
terha	karhaḍa	girhaik	rhasv <sup>2</sup>

The writing of reph in this form with य is usually restricted to Marathi words in which the combination of र and य arises from grammatical processes. Other words are usually written with the superscribed reph. e.g.

सूर्य	सूर्या-	दुसरा	दुसऱ्या-
suury <sup>3</sup>	suurya- <sup>4</sup>	dus'ra	dus'rya- <sup>4</sup>

The word आचार्य, when changed to the 'crude form', before adding suffixes or particles, is distinguished from the 'crude form' of the word आचार्य by this difference in the writing of reph:

आचार्य	आचार्या-	आचारी	आचार्या-
acary <sup>5</sup>	acarya- <sup>4</sup>	acarii <sup>6</sup>	acarya- <sup>4</sup>

Reading examples<sup>7</sup>

तर्क मूर्ख मार्ग दीर्घ खुर्ची खुर्च्या अर्ज\* कोर्ट गार्ड  
पूर्ण कीर्ति अर्थात् वर्दल अर्धा अर्पण ऊर्फ बर्फ  
दुर्बल गर्भ धर्म धार्मिक धैर्य सर्व दर्शन हर्ष नर्स  
त-हा दुर्लभ कु-हाड पूर्वी वर्षे सर्वात अध्या ज्याज्या

1. See Sanskrit, Ch. 3, 3. Cl. 3. iii. a.

2. Sanskrit 'hraisev'.

3. Sanskrit loanword.

4. 'crude form'. 5. 'spiritual preceptor'.

6. 'Brahman cook'.

7. For transcription, see p. 131.



b. र following another character.

The full series of these characters is given in the Sanskrit section<sup>1</sup>. Only a few of these characters occur in Marathi, mostly in Sanskrit loanwords and some English loanwords. For the simplification of printing, new forms such as भ्र , bhra and झ , jra are sometimes used. The reading examples given below illustrate the characters of this group which occur in Marathi.

Reading examples<sup>2</sup>

क्रम	क्रम	इंयजी	आयह	बास	छिद्र	चित्र
प्रयत्न	प्रीति	अश्रु	प्राप्त	नम्र	तीव्र	ताम्रट
श्रीमंत	सहस्र	व्याण्णव	समुद्र			

iv. Characters with preceding ल् or with following ल् .

a. ल् preceding another character.

The characters of this group which occur in Sanskrit are given in the Sanskrit section<sup>3</sup>. The characters occurring in Marathi are illustrated by the words given as reading examples below.

b. ल following another character.

The characters of this group used in Sanskrit are given in the Sanskrit section<sup>4</sup>. The reading examples given below illustrate the characters which occur in Marathi.

The following words illustrate consecutive consonant characters, the first being ekar, realised in the same way as conjunct

characters:	उलटी	बोलतो	घालणें	बसला	घेतला
	ul'ti	bol-to <sup>5</sup>	ghal-ne <sup>5</sup>	bas-la <sup>5</sup>	ghet-la <sup>5</sup>

1. See Sanskrit, Ch. 3, 3. Cl. 3, iii. b. 2. For transcription of examples, see p. 131. 3. See Sanskrit, Ch. 3, 3. Cl. 3, iv. a. 4. Ibid., iv. b. 5. Verbal forms.



Reading examples<sup>1</sup>

बलग्ना फाल्गुण स्वल्प कोल्हा कल्हई ल्होवी क्लास स्लेट

Class 4. vergiyy characters joined with preceding or following uugm characters.

1. vergiyy characters joined with श , ष or स .

2. श , ष or स preceding a vergiyy character.

The full series of these characters occurring in Sanskrit is given in the Sanskrit section<sup>2</sup>. Those which occur in Marathi are illustrated in the examples given below. Most of the characters occur in Sanskrit loanwords, and the character स्त occurs in English loan-words.

The following examples illustrate Marathi words in which consecutive consonant characters, the first being akar, are realised in the same way as conjunct characters:

पुस्तक	पुस्तो	नमस्कार	हिसका	पुष्प	ऐसपैस
pustak	pus-to <sup>3</sup>	namaskar	his'ka	pusp	ays'pays

Reading examples<sup>4</sup>

आश्चर्य पश्चिम पुष्कळ उष्ट राष्ट्र श्रेष्ठ रस्ता तस्त  
 व्यवस्था स्तब्ध निष्फल कृष्ण स्नान स्थिर रस्त्यानें  
 स्त्री स्त्र्या स्पष्ट दृष्टि दृष्ट्या स्थिति आश्चर्य स्फूर्ति  
 शास्त्र स्नेह स्कूल स्टेशन पोस्ट

1. For transcription, see p.132.

2. See Sanskrit, Ch.3,3.Class 4.1.a.

3. Verbal form.

4. For transcription, see p.132.

- b. ष or स following a vargiily character.

The series of characters of this group which occur in Sanskrit are given in the Sanskrit section<sup>1</sup>. Only a few of these characters occur in Marathi, mostly in Sanskrit loanwords. These are illustrated in the reading examples given below. The character क्ष, kṣa, is not calligraphically a conjunct character, and is often included in the varṇamala<sup>2</sup>. Words beginning with this character are usually placed in Marathi dictionaries after words beginning with ह.

Reading examples <sup>3</sup>

वत्सल परिक्षा दुर्लक्ष तीक्ष्ण क्षत्रिय वन्स ओक्साबोक्षी  
सूक्ष्म अक्षरशः उत्सुक अकस्मात्

- ii. ह preceding or following anunasik ('nasal') characters.

- a. ह preceding an anunasik character.

These characters are given in the Sanskrit section<sup>4</sup>. Only one of the characters is used in Marathi, in the word ब्राह्मण brahmaṇ.

- b. ह following an anunasik character.

The characters ण्ह, -ṇhe, न्ह, -nhe and म्ह, -mhe, occur in Marathi<sup>5</sup>.

Reading examples<sup>6</sup>.

तुम्ही आम्ही कण्हेण न्हावी म्हातारा उन्हाळा चिन्ह

1. See Sanskrit, Ch. 3, 3. Class 4. i. b.

2. Compare note on the character झ in Class 2. ii. b. above.

3. For transcription of examples, see p. 132.

4. See Sanskrit, Ch. 3, 3. Class 4. ii. a. 5. ibid. b.

6. For transcription of examples, see p. 132.



Marathi prose passage<sup>1</sup>

प्रत्येक शहराचें महत्त्व कांहीं एक विशिष्ट गोष्टींत आहे. आपल्या या मुंबई इलाख्यांत आज मुंबई, अहमदाबाद, सोलापूर वगैरे शहरें व्यापारासाठीं प्रसिद्ध आहेत. सातारा, अहमदनगर, विजापूर वगैरे शहरें ऐतिहासिक दृष्ट्या महत्त्वाचीं आहेत. पंढरपूर, नाशिक वगैरे शहरें धार्मिक दृष्ट्या श्रेष्ठ गणिलीं जातात. पुणें शहराची प्रसिद्धि विद्वानांचें माहेरघर म्हणून विशेष आहे. कारण या ठिकाणीं सर्व प्रकारच्या शिक्षणाच्या जितक्या सोयी आहेत, तितक्या इतर ठिकाणीं नाहींत, आणि पूर्वी पेशव्यांच्या वेळीं काय किंवा हल्लींच्या इंग्रजी राजवटींत काय महाराष्ट्रांतील विद्वान् लोकांचें तें एक आवडतें स्थान होऊन राहिलें आहे. पुणें शहर समुद्रसपाटीपासून १८५० फूट उंच आहे. या शहराची स्थापना दोनशें वर्षांपूर्वी शिवाजीमहाराजांचे गुरू दादाजी कोंडदेव यांनीं केली. महाराजांचा वाडा येथें होता आणि रायगड घेईपर्यंत त्यांचे मुख्य ठाणें पुण्यासच असे. महाराजांच्या पश्चात् सातारा हें शहर मराठ्यांच्या सत्तेचें केंद्र झालें. पुण्यानजीक सिंहगड किल्ला, भाटघर येतील धरण व तलाव आणि लष्करां-तील सुंदर इमारती पाहण्यासारख्या आहेत. पुण्यांतील शनिवारवाड्याजवळ श्री शिवाजीमहाराजांचें स्मारक म्हणून त्यांचा अश्वारूढ भव्य पुतळा उभा केलेला आहे.

1. Marathi Vachanmala, Bk.4, p.15, by Vasant Ramchandra Nerurkar, pub. Keshav Bhikaji Dhavale, Girgaum, Bombay.



Transcription of Reading ExamplesChapter 2.

- 1.i.      ne              ge              tse              dhe
- jeg    ped    kher    beg    men    theg    khet    ped    dhem  
chet    neth    dheg    ken    doph    bhet    tsek    zen    zhet
- medet    peked    ghetek    bhejen    theket    thenek    phobet  
dhemek    khek    tsephen    zekhem    petset    zepet    zheged
- kheth'pet    dhem'ket    ged'bed    men'get    theb'ket    kher'ket  
peth'ken    tsem'ket    tets'ken    dets'ket    kets'ket    zhet'ken
- 1.ii.    ve
- ker    jel    ver    ven    jey    ther    vey    gher    ledh    ley  
dher    kel    leth    bher    der    lev    tser    tsel    zer    tsev
- bedel    dheren    calen    gavet    teney    vecan    kenav    rayet  
teloph    dhakel    verav    tsaret    nezar    gerez    mazel    vazen
- lav'ker    ker'met    per'ker    ter'phal    dhen'ger    ker'vet  
pel'ten    kets'rat    peked'vet    tser'bet    keram'tets
- 1.iii.    ser    bes    yef    het    her    sen    fak    fav    phas  
hes    set    khes    vej    fer    ras    faha    teha    seha
- phenes    peser    fepath    sedek    semay    heren    seres    kela  
fether    besav    serak    defek    hazer    leher    sehez    phasel
- her'ket    hey'gay    ser'vet    fet'pet    ser'pen    mes'let  
hanvet    ser'saket    mesen'vet    semaz'tets
- chel    phel    khel    saral    zavel    halad    velen    dhevel  
palas    tsel'vel    bel'ket    mez'zavel    kel'molet    zavel'ser
- 2.i.      a              e              o              ai
- ed    an    ath    iid    uuth    ek    aik    odh    avt  
uun    avt    iid    uus    ol    ein    avt    of    rn  
seli    meu    zail    neu    iter    usel    olakh    uter    ukhal  
apen    avvez    udet    avren    selai    ojher    avsedh    olakh
- 2.ii.    kha    hii    to    ne    pay    dhuu    chi    bhi    ga    ghe    thuu    ho
- thiik    ruudh    jhiil    tel    mavz    dos    drdh    bayl    hit    duudh  
kay    hoy    nav    jev    kavi    khaquu    jev    behu    neye    berii  
dol'a    peysa    krpa    dhobii    fiju    chatii    bhiiti    guru    tsavda  
bail    bhauu    rsi    suii    eke    yeii    rtu    aike    olii

məydan rumal tʰeviin jevuun kəʋtuk nokər bequuk gəruud  
 kəthor jiiven zemiin deuu pauus ləqhaii tərəzūu tʰuiʈii  
 vəgəyɾe tʰəvpaʈii pahije mərəʈhii tʰikauu bəyragii bhikarii  
 iter ek əykila utər uuʈh gheiiin aii dhuuun

p.106. khiɖ'kii kor'da dus'ra kəp'de ik'de tək'dii kuŋ'bii  
 tʰəv'k'fii koy'ta guɖ'ghe əv'gha par'dhii ev'dha bat'mii  
 tər'buuz ker'suŋii phəvz'dar fik'veŋ ub'dar nuk'tatʂ  
 khəbər'dar phəsəv'ŋuuk hat'us'na soɖəv'ŋuuk ləhan'pəŋa

kəʈet kəʈ-to pəs'ra pəsər-tat sər'kuun sərək-tiil  
 ghəsər ghəs'ruun ghəs'riil ghəsər-fiil aʈh'vuun aʈhəv-tiil  
 bighəɖ bigh'duun bighəɖ-ləla əɖ'khəʈet əɖ'khəʈ-tat

### Chapter 3.

#### Class 1.

phikka əkkəl səkkhii dægga kettʂa gəcii iccha ləjja  
 həʈʈii ləʈʈhe ciʈʈhii khəɖɖa ʃaŋŋəv pəʈta utthan rəddii buddhi  
 ənn chəppənn ləppha qhəbbuu hiyya kirr həllii səvva iff hissa

#### Class 2.

yukti	cəmətkar	səɖguŋ	upodghat	mugdh	səʈkor	utpənn
ʃəbd	gupt	səʈphəl	səməpt	udbhəv	udbodhək	phəkt
ləgn	atma	pəɖma	rətn	jʃan	jənm	vəŋmɐy

#### Class 3.i.

vaky	dokyaɭa	səŋkhyə	agya	ghya	tiɕya
rajy	jyane	tujhyə	pəʈya	moʈhyane	ciʈʈhyə
gaɖya	pəɖhyatʂa	həŋyas	əŋyatʂe	tyacyə	
pothya	udya	məɖhye	nyahaʈ-ŋe	pyala	nəphyatʂa
dhobyane	əbhyaɕ	bhyala	rəmy	suury	kholya
kəravyaɕ	vyakhyan	əvəʃy	rəhəɕy	mənuɕy	
hyala	maʈyane	atmyatʂa	mukhy	nəɖya	

#### Class 3.ii.

kvəcit	gvahii	ucchvas	jvala	viʃvas	svəʈeh
iifvər	svecc	svepn	dvara	sərəsvətii	kevhə
təttvəjʃan	məhəttv	ənvəy	sərv	dhvəja	vhaʈ
					ʃvas

#### Class 3.iii.

a. tərək muurkh marg diirgh khurcii khurɕya ərz korʈ garɖ  
 puurn kiirti ərthat vərɖəl ərdha ərpəŋ uurph bərph  
 durbəl gərɓh dhərm dhərmik dhəyry sərv dərʃən hərəʃ nərə  
 tərha durləbh kurhaɖ puurvii vərəʂə sərvat ərdhyə ryarya

b. krəm	krəm	ingrəjii	agrəhə	tras	chidr	citr
prəyətŋ	priiti	əbruu	prəpt	nəmr	tiivr	tamrəʈ
ʃriiment	səhəsɾ	tryəŋŋəv	səmuɖɾ			



## Class 3.iv.

velgēna phalguṇ svēlp kolha kēlhēii lhovii klas sēt

## Class 4.

i.a. aṣcary pēscim puṣkēl uṣṭ raṣṭr jreṣṭh rēsta tēst  
 vyēvēstha stēbdh niṣphēl krṣṇ snan sthir rēstyane  
 strii strya spēṣṭ drṣṭi drṣṭya sthiti aṣcary sphuurti  
 jāstr snehē skuul stēṣen post

b. vatsēl pēriikṣa durlēkṣ tiikṣṇ kṣētriya vēnsē oksabokṣii  
 suukṣm akṣarēṣēh utsuk ak'smat

ii. tumhii amhii kēṇhēṇe nhavii mhatara unhaḷa cinh

Marathi Prose Passage<sup>1</sup>

pratyek jēhēratṣe mēhēttv kahii ek viṣiṣṭ goṣṭiit ahe. ap'lya ya mumbēii ilakhyat az mumbēii, āh'mēdabad, solapur vāgēyṛe jēhēre vya-parasāṭhii prāsiddh ahet. satara, āh'mēd'nēgēr, vijapur vāgēyṛe jēhēre āyṭihasik drṣṭya mēhēttvacii ahet. pēṇḍhēr'puur, nāṣik vāgēyṛe jēhēre dharmik drṣṭya jreṣṭh gēṇīlii zatāt. puṇe jēhēracii prāsiddhi vidvanantṣe mahēr'ghēr mēṇquun viṣēṣ ahe. karēṇ ya ṭhikanīi sērv prēkar'cya ṣikṣēṇacya jīt'kya soyii ahet, tīt'kya itēr ṭhikanīi nahīit, āṇi puurvii pēṣvyāncya vēlii kay kiṃva hēllicya iṅgrējii raj'veṭiit kay mēhārāṣṭratiil vidvan lokantṣe tē ek avēḍ'te sthan houun rahile ahe. puṇe jēhēr sēmdrēpāṭīipasūun 1850 phuuṭ unṭṣ ahe. ya jēhēracii sthāpēna don ṣe vērṣapurvii ṣivajiimēhārājantṣe guru dadajii kōṇḍēdev yānii kēlii. mēhārājantṣa vāḍa yethe hota āṇi ray'gēḍ gheipēryēnt tyantṣe mukhy ṭhāṇe puṇyāsēṭṣ ēsē. mēhārājāncya pēscāt satara hē jēhēr mērāṭhyāncya sēttēṭṣe kēndr zhālē. puṇyānējiik ṣimhē-gēḍ killa, bhāṭ'ghēr yēthiil dhērēṇ vē tēlav āṇi lēṣkēratiil sunder imar'tii pah'ṛyāsār'khyā ahet. puṇyatiil ṣēnivar'vāḍyazēvēḷ ṣrii ṣivajiimēhārājantṣe smārēk mēṇquun tyantṣa ēṣvaruudh bhēvy putēḷa ubha kēlēla ahe.

1. anusvars to be read with zero-realisation are not transcribed in this passage.



## GUJARATI SECTION



# CHAPTER 1

## ARRANGEMENT OF THE SYLLABARY

The writing system of Gujarati (ગુજરાતી , gujeratī) is based on the Sanskrit system, with some modifications as in the other modern languages of Northern India which are written in the Devanagari script. The characters of the Gujarati script are arranged in the same way as those of the Devanagari script, given in the Sanskrit section<sup>1</sup>.

The script is referred to as બાળબોધ (bāḷabodh), 'that can be understood by a child'. Each character is called અક્ષર (akṣar), and the syllabic series is called વર્ણમાલા (vaṇṇamāla), 'character-series'. The terms used by Gujarati grammarians to refer to the characters are similar to those used in Sanskrit, but as the realisation of the characters in reading Gujarati differs somewhat from the Sanskrit system in respect of consonant characters realised with the vowel *e* , these terms are used in this section in their Gujarati form and transcribed in accordance with the realisation of the characters in Gujarati. The following examples illustrate the difference between the terms used in the Sanskrit section and the corresponding terms used in this section:

Sanskrit	अक्षरम्	(akṣarəm)	Gujarati	અક્ષર	(akṣar)
	विरामः	(viraməḥ)		વિરામ	(viram)
	अन्तःस्थ	(antəḥsthe)		અન્તસ્થ	(antəsth)

---

1. See Sanskrit, Ch.1.



## GUJARATI SECTION

The table given below shows the arrangement of the Gujarati syllabary in roman notation. As the system of writing is syllabic, and the characters in the syllabary represent syllables consisting of either a vowel, or a consonant followed by the vowel ə, the roman tables show each consonant with this vowel. The vowel ə, when realised in this way with a consonant character, is usually referred to in English texts as the 'inherent vowel'.

CONSONANTS with ə			1 Velar	2 Palatal	3 Retro- flex	4 Dental	5 Labial
P l o s i v e s	Voiceless	Unaspirated	kə	cə	ʈə	tə	pə
		Aspirate	khə	chə	ʈhə	thə	phə
	Voiced	Unaspirated	gə	jə	ɖə <sup>1</sup>	də	bə
		Aspirated	ghə	jhə	ɖhə <sup>1</sup>	dhə	bhə
	Nasal		(ŋə) <sup>2</sup>	(ɲə) <sup>2</sup>	ɳə	nə	mə
Semivowels				yə	rə	lə	və <sup>3</sup>
Fricatives				ʃə	ʂə <sup>4</sup>	sə	
Aspirate			hə				
Lateral					ɭə		
VOWELS		ə   a	i   ii	u   uu	e, ε <sup>5</sup> əy̐	o, ɔ <sup>5</sup> əv̐	r <sup>4</sup>
MODIFIERS		Nasal - ŋ   or   ~   Aspirated - h					

1. - 5. See notes on following page.

1. The characters represented by *ḍe* and *ḍhe* are realised medially and finally with the flapped consonants *ṛ* and *ṛh* in some words.
2. The characters represented by *ṇe* and *ṇhe* occur only in combination with other consonants, in Sanskrit loanwords.
3. The character represented by *ve* is usually realised with labiodental articulation.
4. The characters represented by *ṣe* and syllabic *r* occur only in Sanskrit loanwords.
5. The vowels *e* and *ē* are written in the script with the same character, or vowel sign, usually transcribed as *e*. The vowels *o* and *ō* are also written with the same character, or vowel sign, usually transcribed as *o*.

The series of vowels includes 'short' *i* and 'long' *ii*, 'short' *u* and 'long' *uu*. These pairs of vowels occur in Gujarati words, and the characters representing the 'short' and the 'long' vowels are written according to certain rules of orthography<sup>1</sup>. This distinction between the 'short' and 'long' vowels is preserved in this work in the transcription of the characters, though in modern Gujarati speech there is often little difference between the pronunciation of words written with the characters representing the 'short' or the 'long' vowels.

---

1. See Chapter 2, under 2.ii.Vowel Signs.



## CHAPTER 2

### CHARACTERS OF THE SYLLABARY

The Gujarati characters are a modified form of the Devanagari characters, with some changes of line and form which have come about through an adaptation of the script for cursive writing. The characters are more rounded than those of the Devanagari script, and do not have a head-stroke. Comparison with the characters in the Sanskrit section will show how the Gujarati characters are related in form to those of the Devanagari script. The method of writing the Gujarati characters is in general the method described in the Introduction, and reference should be made to the notes on calligraphy given with each group of characters in the Sanskrit section. Special notes are given below on the calligraphy of any characters of which the order of strokes cannot be easily deduced from the Devanagari characters.

The Gujarati characters are described in this chapter under the same headings as the characters in the Sanskrit section: Consonant Characters, Vowel Characters and Vowel Signs, and Modifiers.

#### 1. Consonant Characters.

The consonant characters are arranged in three groups: 'vargiiy' characters, 'əntəsth' characters and 'uṣm' characters<sup>1</sup>. As they are given in the syllabary, these characters are realised as syllables consisting of an initial consonant, or semi-vowel, followed by the vowel *e*, and they are described as २५१२ (əkar). The realisation

---

1. See Sanskrit, Ch.2,1.1 - iii.



of a consonant character without this vowel, that is, as the consonant element of the syllable only, is indicated by a diagonal stroke written at the foot of the character, thus ક, k-, ત, t-, and so on, as in Sanskrit. This stroke is called **વિરામ** (viram)<sup>1</sup> and a character written with this stroke is called 'halant' by Gujarati grammarians; but in the teaching of writing in schools, characters written with this stroke are described as ખોડું (khoḍū, 'lame').

The realisation of ekar consonant characters in reading Gujarati differs somewhat from the realisation of these characters in Sanskrit. The following notes may be regarded as general guiding principles to which reference may be made later when the characters are discussed in detail.

- a. A final ekar consonant character is usually realised with zero-vowel, except in a few Sanskrit loanwords.<sup>2</sup>
- b. A final ekar consonant character formed by combining two or more characters<sup>3</sup>, or a final ekar consonant character preceded by a character written with the anusvar representing a nasal consonant<sup>4</sup>, is usually realised with an a-glide.
- c. A medial ekar consonant character is realised in certain contexts with zero-vowel, or with an a-glide, for instance, when such a character occurs as the second character of a three character word, and the final character has one of the vowel signs<sup>5</sup>.
- d. When an ekar consonant character is the final character of a verbal base, it is usually realised with zero-vowel, or with an

1. See Sanskrit, Ch. 2, 1.      2. The viram is not written in Gujarati with characters which are realised in this way; it is written only in a few Sanskrit loanwords.      3. See below, Ch. 3, 2.  
4. See below, 3.1.b.      5. See below, 2.11.

a-glide, before the addition of suffixes consisting of, or beginning with, a consonant character with one of the vowel signs.

For guidance in reading, final *ekar* consonant characters realised with zero-vowel are transcribed without *a*, and medial *ekar* consonant characters realised with zero-vowel or with an *a*-glide are transcribed thus: *k'*, *t'*, *p'*.

1. Characters of the *vergiiy* group (વર્ગીય)<sup>1</sup>.

The first group of consonant characters consists of twentyfive characters representing syllables with an initial plosive consonant followed by the vowel *a*. These characters fall into five *વર્ગ* (*verg*), or classes, according to the five positions of articulation.

ke- <i>verg</i>	ક	ખ	ગ	ઘ	ઙ
	kə	kʰə	gə	gʰə	-ŋə <sup>2</sup>
ce- <i>verg</i>	ચ	છ	જ	ઝ	ઞ
	çə	çʰə	ʝə	ʝʰə	-ɲə
te- <i>verg</i>	ટ	ઠ	ડ	ઢ	ણ
	ʈə	ʈʰə	ɖə	ɖʰə	-ɳə
ta- <i>verg</i>	ત	થ	દ	ધ	ન
	tə	tʰə	də	dʰə	nə
pe- <i>verg</i>	પ	ફ	બ	ભ	મ
	pə	pʰə	bə	bʰə	mə

An older form of ફ is ફ.

1. See Sanskrit, Ch. 2, 1.1. 2. Characters which do not occur initially are shown by a hyphen prefixed to the syllable in the roman transcription.



The characters ક , ફ , ઝ and ઢ are written thus:

ક	૮	૬	ક	ફ	૮	૬	ફ
ઝ	૭	૭	ઝ	ઢ	૮	૭	ઢ

The ekar consonant characters are referred to, as for instance in spelling, thus: ક , કકો (kekko), ત , તતો (tetto), and so on.

The characters ડ and ઙ do not occur in Gujarati words, but they are written, in combination with other characters, in some Sanskrit loanwords in the literary language. The characters ડ and ઢ are realised medially and finally as pə and pʰə in certain words. Examples of this realisation are given later, after the vowel signs are discussed.<sup>1</sup>

Reading examples<sup>2</sup>

1. One character words. Four of the vergily characters occur as words: ત ઇ ય ઠ

2. Two character words, final characters realised with zero-vowel.

ધન પડા નમ ગજ ચડ મઠ કમ ભણ ઇઠ ઢા  
ઝા ઘડ ધન તક થડ ઠમ બન ફટ જડ પડા

3. Three character words, final characters realised with zero-vowel.

બદન પકડ ઝડપ મઠઠ ચમન ફટક તડા ગમત  
જમણ બાડા નાલ ધમક ઇપટ તનમ ભજન પડન

4. Four character words, second characters realised with zero-vowel or with an ə-glide; final characters realised with zero-vowel.

ઘડપણ ભટકણ ચક્રમક ઝટપટ બડઇટ ગજકણ

1. See below, under 2.11.

2. For transcription, see p.168.



## ii. Characters of the əntəsth group (અન્તરથ)¹

There are four Gujarati characters in this group, as in the same group of Sanskrit characters.

ય

yə

લ

lə

ર

rə

વ

və

When the characters ય and વ occur initially, or medially realised with a following vowel, they are realised as consonants. When they occur medially, in positions in which əkar consonant characters are realised with zero-vowel, or finally, they are realised as semi-vowels, forming diphthongs with the vowel of the preceding syllable.<sup>2</sup>

e.g.

યજન

yəjən

વન

vən

ભય

bhəy

જવ

jəv

Reading examples<sup>3</sup>

1. None of the əntəsth characters occurs as a word.
2. Two character words, final characters realised with zero-vowel.  
રથ પર લખ ધર ખલ ખર રજ રવ લગ વય  
યવ લય છર ઝલ વર રડ કલ અય ભર જય
3. Three character words, final characters realised with zero-vowel.  
લયક છલર વરધ ઝરણ ભરડ વખત રતન તરફ  
રવડ વરઢ લગણ યવન ચરક પલખ પવન ભરણ
4. Four character words, second characters realised with zero-vowel or with an ə-glide; final characters realised with zero-vowel.  
કલતર લગભગ પડતર લડકણ તરતજ ઢકતર

1. See Sanskrit, Ch.2,1.ii.

2. Further examples of the realisation of these two characters are given below, under 2.ii.

3. For transcription, see p.168.

iii. Characters of the uuṣm group (ઉષ્મ)<sup>1</sup>

These characters as given in the Sanskrit section are written in the Hindi style. The Gujarati characters are:

શ  
ʃə

ષ  
ʃə

સ  
sə

હ  
hə

The character ષ occurs only in Sanskrit loanwords, and when written in words in common use in Gujarati, it is often realised as ʃə except in formal reading.

Reading examples.<sup>2</sup>

1. None of the characters in this group occurs as a word.

2. Two character words; final characters realised with zero-vowel.

રસ શઠ સઠ શણ હસ ઢશ યશ સર હસ શત

3. Three character words; final characters realised with zero-vowel.

લસણ હલક સરસ હરખ શપથ સમય હરણ ફણસ

4. Four and five character words; final characters realised with zero-vowel, second character in four character words, third character in the five character word, realised with zero-vowel or with an ə-glide.

સમજણ શરબત સરકટ કસરત હરકત વકતસર

The last consonant character in the Gujarati syllabary is

ળ, -[ɭ]<sup>3</sup>, realised as a retroflex lateral consonant with ə.

Reading examples.<sup>2</sup>

ફળ ઢળ હળ બળઢ ધવળ કમળ પરવળ હળવટ

1. See Sanskrit, Ch.2,1.iii. 2. For transcription, see p.168.

3. See Sanskrit, Ch.2,1.iii. Vedic character.



The two characters **ઢ** and **ઙ**, each representing syllables consisting of two consonants followed by the vowel **ə**, are often placed at the end of the series of consonant characters in the varṇamala, but they do not properly belong to the syllabary, and they are discussed later<sup>1</sup>.

## 2. Vowel Characters and Vowel Signs.<sup>2</sup>

### 1. Vowel Characters.

The vowel characters used in writing Gujarati correspond with the vowel characters in Sanskrit though the forms differ. Syllabic **rr**, **l** and **ll** do not occur in Gujarati<sup>3</sup>. The vowel characters are usually placed first in the varṇamala.

<b>अ</b>	<b>आ</b>	<b>इ</b>	<b>ई</b>	<b>उ</b>	<b>ऊ</b>
a	ā	i	ī	u	ū
<b>ऋ</b>	<b>ॠ</b>	<b>ऌ</b>	<b>ॡ</b>	<b>ॢ</b>	<b>ॣ</b>
syllabic r	e, e <sup>4</sup>	əṛ	o, o <sup>4</sup>	əṃ	əṃ

The character **ऋ**, syllabic **r**, occurs only in a few Sanskrit loanwords, used mainly in the literary language. The vowel characters are referred to as **ekar**, **akar**, **ikar**, **ukar**, and so on.

In all reading examples which follow, **ekar** consonant characters which occur in words having vowel characters or vowel signs should be realised according to the general rules already given, unless special notes are added.

1. See below, Ch.3. Classes 2. and 4.

2. For the use of vowel

characters and vowel signs, see Sanskrit, Ch.2,2.1.

3. See Sanskrit, Ch.2,2.1.

4. See above, Ch.1. The realisation of these vowel characters as **e** or **ə**, and as **o** or **ə**, is discussed below under 11. Vowel Signs.



Reading examples<sup>1</sup>

1. Vowel characters only.

અા એ આઓ એઓ

2. Vowel characters with akar characters.

ઈસ ઊન એક આપ એઠ ઋણ આજ ઔઠ  
ઉચક ઈયળ ઊઠ એઠ ઔષધ ઔઘ ઉભડ ઈશ  
ઔઠ મઠિ લઈ દઈ ગઈ જઈએ દઈએ લઈએ

ii. Vowel signs.

Vowel signs corresponding to each vowel character, except અ , are added to the akar form of the consonant characters to represent syllables consisting of an initial consonant followed by one of the vowels a to eṽ . The vowel signs are given here added to the character ક .

કા	કિ	કી	કુ	કૂ	કૃ	કે	કૈ	કો	કૌ
ka	ki	kii	ku	kuu	kr	ke,ke	kəṽ	ko,kə	kəṽ

The order of strokes in writing characters with vowel signs is in general the same as that described in the notes on calligraphy in the Sanskrit section<sup>2</sup>. Some of the characters are modified in form when certain of the vowel signs are added.

a. The upright stroke of a character is written without rounding the foot when the vowel signs for u or uu are added:

ગુ	ગૂ	પુ	પૂ	સુ	સૂ
gu	guu	pu	puu	su	suu

b. Special forms:

જા	જિ	જી	જુ	જૂ	ણ	ર,રુ	ર,રુ	દ	ધ્ર	હ
ja	ji	jii	ju	juu	ṇu	ru	ruu	dr	ḍr	hr

1. For transcription of examples, see p.168.

2. See Sanskrit, Ch.2, 2.11.

In the teaching of writing in schools, and in spelling, the up-right stroke of a character, and of the vowel signs corresponding to the characters આ , ઓ and ઔ are referred to as કાનો (kano), and the diagonal superscribed strokes in the vowel characters and signs, as in એ , ઐ , ઓ and ઔ , are referred to as માત્રા (matra). The vowel signs for ઇ and ઈ are called હ્રસ્વ ઇ (hrasv i) and દીર્ઘ ઈ (diirgh ii), and the vowel signs for ઉ and ઊ are called હ્રસ્વ ઉ (hrasv u) and દીર્ઘ ઊ (diirgh uu)<sup>1</sup>. Characters having vowel signs are described as 'akar', 'ukar', 'ekar' and so on.

Reading examples<sup>2</sup>

1. One character words.

કે પૈ સૌ છે જા ધી તે ચા જે ભૂ થો જ

2. Words of two or more characters.

શેઠ રોજ ઠીક દૂધ લોક રૂપ ચીજ દઢ હિત જાય  
ગોક લાવ નહિ બહુ મને પછી આજે ઊભો ઉગે  
આપો ઋષિ ઋતુ સૌએ તેઓ ભાઈ ધીએ જુઓ  
ઐરી ગોળો વારુ પૈસો મુકે રાજ પેલો કિવો કૃપા વિષે  
નિશાળે ઉજાણી રૂપિયો તાબેદારી હોશિયારી ભાઈઓએ

Realisation of the vowels એ and ઓ .

These vowel characters, and the corresponding vowel signs, each represent two vowels of different quality. The vowel character એ and the corresponding sign are realised in the majority of words as e , but in some words as ε ; the vowel character ઓ and the corresponding sign are realised in the majority of words as o , but in

1. hrasv, 'short' ; diirgh, 'long'.

2. For transcription, see p.168.



some words as ડ . The realisation of these characters as e and o is described by Gujarati grammarians as વિવૃત (vivṛt, 'open'). Some pairs of words, written in the same way, are distinguished in meaning only by the realisation of the vowel ઓ as o or as ડ . Some words in frequent use in which these vowels are realised as 'open' vowels are given below; a fuller list of such words is given in the Gujarati dictionary 'Narmakosh'<sup>1</sup>, and in the dictionary 'Jodnikosh'<sup>2</sup> words in which the 'open' vowels occur are specially noted.

Words in which એ , or the corresponding sign, is realised as e :

એમ એઢી કહે- કેડ કેદ કેમ કેરી ગેલ ઘેર ઘેલો છેન  
જેમ ઝેર ઢેલ તેમ દેશ નેમ પહેર-<sup>3</sup> પેર પેસ- પહેલો  
ફેણ બે બેઠ- બેઠક બેસ- બેન બહેન મેમાન મેર મેલ  
રહે- લે- લેણ લહેર વેપારી વેર વહેલો શહેર સહેજ સહેલો

Words in which ઓ , or the corresponding sign, is realised as o :

ઓગળ ઓછાડ ઓઝલ ઓસર- કોમલ કોપલો<sup>4</sup> કોગલો  
કોઠ કોડી કોણ કોલસો કોલિયો બોળો ગોળ ચોક<sup>5</sup>  
ચોપડી તો દોડ- દોઢ ધોલ ધોળો ધોળ- નોકર નોખો  
નોમ પહોળો પોણો<sup>6</sup> ભો મોર મોવાળો મોસાળ મોળ  
રોક વહોર શોક શોખ સો સોડ હો-

When characters with these vowels are written with the mark of nasalisation known as the anusvar<sup>7</sup>, they are realised as 'open' vowels.

1. નર્મકોશ , narmakoś, pub.1873. 2. સાર્થ ગુજરાતી જોડણીકોશ sarthe gujeratī jodṇāṇī koś, pub.1949. The 'open' realisation of these vowel characters and signs is indicated in this dictionary by inverting the matra.
3. The words written with a hyphen are verbal bases. 4. In this and later words in which there are two okar characters, it is the first which is realised with ડ .
5. Similarly all words in which the first syllable is ઓ , 'four'.
6. Similarly other words in which the first syllable is પોણ-, 'less a quarter'.
7. See below, under 3. Modifiers, 1. anusvar.



Some words which are distinguished in meaning only by the realisation of ઓ as o or as ɔ :

ગોળ	gol, 'round'	ગૉળ, 'treacle'
ખોળ	khol, 'enquiry'	khōl, 'oil-cake'
ચોપડી	copəɽii, 'smeared'	copəɽii, 'book'
કોણ	koŋ, 'angle'	kōŋ, 'who'
ચોળી	coɽii, 'bodice'	coɽii, (name of a vegetable)
સોળ	soɽ, 'sixteen'	sōɽ, 'weal', 'stripe'

Realisation of əkar consonant characters in words with vowel characters and signs in certain positions.

- a. When a medial əkar consonant character, in a three character word, is followed by a final character with a vowel sign, it is usually realised with zero-vowel, or with an ə-glide, and the semi-vowels represented by ય and વ form diphthongs with the vowel of the preceding syllable, as in

એટલો	ચરબી	મણકો	ફાયદો	છેવટે
eɽ'lo	cər'bii	məŋ'ko	phay'do	chev'te

The realisation of medial əkar characters in words of more than three characters varies according to the position in each word of the characters with vowel signs. In compound words, the realisation depends upon the form of the words joined in the compound. The following examples illustrate the realisation of əkar consonant characters in such words.

Second characters realised with zero-vowel, or with an ə-glide:

જેતકરી	કેટલાક	નુકસાન	જાનવર
jet'kerii	keɽ'lak	nuk'san	jan'ver

Other characters realised with zero-vowel, or with an ə-glide:

દુકાનદાર	તાબડતોબ	કપટબાજી	પરવાનગી
dukan'dar	tabəḍ'tob	kəpəṭ'baʒii	pər'van'gii

- b. When a suffix beginning with a consonant character is added to a noun or pronoun, or to a verbal base, ending in an əkar consonant character, this final character is realised with zero-vowel, or with an ə-glide, as in these examples:

ગામનો	તમને	કરતો	બોલવા	લાગશે
gam-no	təm-ne	kər-to	bol-va	lag-ʃe

When such suffixes are added to verbal bases of three or more characters, of which the final and pre-final consonant characters are əkar, the realisation of the pre-final character varies in the way illustrated by the following examples:

સમજ	સમજી	સમજવા	સમજાવવા
səməj	səm'jii	səməj-va	səm'jav-va
યરક	યરકે	યરકતો	યરકાવવો
therək	thər'ke	therək-to	thər'kav-vo

Reading examples<sup>1</sup>

1. əkar consonant characters realised as in note a.

એકઠા અપશે બકરી નકશે પોગાળી આજસુ કસબી  
પાયલી જમરુખ પાયદળ કોઠવાલ ગુજરાતી કસબચોર

2. əkar consonant characters realised as in note b.

છેતર છેતરે છેતરવી પકડ પકડો પકડવો  
પસર પસરીને પસરવી મોકલી મોકલવી

1. For transcription, see p.168.



Realisation of medial and final ૐ and ૑ .

The character ૐ is usually realised medially or finally as a flapped consonant,  $\text{p}^1$ , except when preceded by a character written with the anusvar<sup>2</sup>. In some words, however, it is always realised as a stop,  $\text{p}$ . The character ૑ is usually realised as a stop,  $\text{q}$ , and sometimes as a flapped consonant. In some words the realisation as a stop is constant. The following examples are some of the words in frequent use in which ૐ and ૑ are always realised as stops<sup>3</sup>:

આડો ઊડ- ઓડ કોડ ખાડો ગાડર ગાડી જોડો તીડ બુડ-ભૂડ  
ભૂડવો ભૂડ આઠી ઓઠણ કાઠ- કાઠ ઠાઠી બુઠી વાઠ-

These characters are always realised as stops after nasalisation.

In the following pairs of words the realisation of ૐ as  $\text{p}$  or as  $\text{p}^1$  is necessary for distinction of meaning:

ખાડો	$\text{paqo}$ , 'male buffalo'	પાળો	'neighbourhood'
જાડું	$\text{jaq}^1$ , 'thick'	જાવું	'jaw'
વડો	$\text{vaqo}$ , 'cancelled'	વેળો	'elderly'

Orthography of the 'short' and 'long' vowels.<sup>5</sup>

The following general rules are usually applied in writing the vowel characters ઈ , ઈ and ઉ , ઊ , and the corresponding vowel signs, though practice varies, and numerous exceptions occur.

- a. ઈ , and the corresponding sign, are usually written in final characters, or immediately preceding a final ekar consonant

1. See note in 1.1. above. 2. See below, under 3.1. anusvar.  
3. See Notes on Gujarati Phonology, T.N.Dave, Bulletin of the School of Oriental Studies, Vol.VI.p.673 ff.  
4. For the mark of nasalisation on the final character of this word, see below, under 3.1.anusvar. 5. Fuller notes on Gujarati orthography are given in 'Jodnikosh', Introduction, p.30 ff.



character, unless this is a conjunct character<sup>1</sup>; e.g.

લઈ	કરી	પાણી	ઠીક	ચીજ	ગરીબ
lei	keri	pañi	thiik	ciij	gariib

ઈ , and the corresponding sign, are usually written in all other positions<sup>2</sup>; e.g.

દિવસ	તિકત	બિલાડી	હોશિયાર	ઘડિયાળ
dives	tikhəṭ	bilaḍii	hoṣiyar	ghaḍiyaḷ

Some exceptions:

બીજો	હકીકત	લીધે	કીધો	શીખીને
biijo	həkiiket	liidhe	kiidho	ṣiikhiine

b. ઊ , and the corresponding sign, are usually written in a medial position when immediately preceding a final ekar consonant character, unless this is a conjunct character; e.g.

ઊઠ	દૂધ	ભૂખ	ફૂલ	મજૂર
uṭh	duudh	bhuukh	phuul	məjuur

ઉ , and the corresponding sign, are usually written in other positions, though many words occur in Gujarati texts written with either the 'short' or the 'long' vowel<sup>2</sup>; e.g.

ઉનાળો	દુકાન	સુથાર	વારુ	આપસુ
unaḷo	dukan	suthar	varu	aḷ'su

Some exceptions:

ઉચક	ઉપર	ઉભો	ફૂવો	સૂઝ-
uček	uuper	uubho	kuuvo	suujh-

The Sanskrit orthography is usually preserved in Sanskrit loan-words; e.g.

હિત	ભીતિ	પુરુષ	ભૂમિ	બહુ
hit	bhiiti	puruṣ	bhuumi	bəhu

1. See below, Chapter 3.

2. For this vowel written with the anusvar, see below, under 3.i.

### 3. Modifiers.

The modifiers, **અનુસ્વાર** (anusvar) and **વિસર્ગ** (visarg), used in the Devanagari script, are both used in writing Gujarati.<sup>1</sup>

#### 1. anusvar.

The anusvar is a mark representing nasalisation, and is written in Gujarati in the form of a dot above a character, thus:

અં	આં	ઈં	ઉં	એં	ઑં	કાં	કિં	કું	કેં	કોં
am̐	aṃ	iṃ	uṃ	eṃ	oṃ	kaṃ	kiṃ	kuṃ	keṃ	koṃ

The anusvar is placed at the right side of any superscribed stroke, and it is written on the character after every other stroke, as in the Devanagari script.<sup>2</sup>

Realisation of the anusvar.

- a. The anusvar is realised in some words as the nasalisation of the vowel of the character with which it is written. This realisation occurs usually when the anusvar is written with any of the vowels **આ** to **ઔ**, except in some Sanskrit loanwords. The anusvar realised in this way occurs in many grammatical forms. Examples:

કંઈ	માં	ઈંટ	તું	ઊંચ	મેં	પહેંચ	પૌંવા
kāi	mā	iṭ	tū	ūc	mē	peh̐c	pāv̐va

Grammatical forms:

છોકરાં	બધાંએ	કેળું	મારું	જાઉં	આવું
chokerā	badhāe	keḷū	marū	jaū	av-vū

The 'long' vowels **ઈ** and **ઉ** are usually written in characters with the anusvar when it represents nasalisation of a vowel,

1. See Sanskrit, Ch.2,3.1. and ii.

2. ibid., note on calligraphy of the anusvar.



except in grammatical forms described as 'neuter singular', which are always written with the 'short' vowel; e.g.

વીંછી	ભીંત	ઊંડો	મારું	લીંબું	ઊંડું
vīichī	bhīit	ūḍo	marū	lībū	ūḍū

Some words are written with either 'short' or 'long' vowels.

The vowel characters એ and ઓ, and the corresponding signs, are realised with the anusvar as ઈ and ઊ; e.g.

ખેંચવું	ભેંસ	સોંપવું	પહોંચવું
khēc-vū	bhēs	sōp-vū	pehōc-vū

- b. The anusvar written on a character preceding one of the vergiī characters may be realised as the nasal consonant of the same class as the following character, or as n before a character of the cə-verg. This realisation of the anusvar occurs mainly in reading Sanskrit loanwords. When the anusvar is realised as a nasal consonant before a final əkar consonant character, the final character is usually realised with an ə-glide<sup>1</sup>. Examples:

કંઠ	શાંતિ	જંતુ	સંભાળ	સંબંધ
keṇṭh	śanti	jentu	səmbhaḷ	səmbendh

As in Sanskrit, there is an alternative method of representing nasal consonants in this context. This method is described later.<sup>2</sup>

The 'short' forms of the vowels ઈ and ઊ are usually written with the anusvar representing a nasal consonant; e.g.

લિંગ	ચિંતા	સુંદર	કુંભાર
liṅg	cinta	sunder	kumbhar

1. See above, 1.b. Realisation of əkar consonant characters.  
2. See below, Ch.3,3.Class 2.ii.



c. When the anusvar is written on a character preceding an antesth or an uṣm character, as in Sanskrit loanwords and learned words used in the literary language, it is realised in various ways, according to the position of articulation of the following consonant. The realisation of the anusvar in these contexts by speakers in various parts of India is described in the Sanskrit section<sup>1</sup>.

The usual Gujarati practice is illustrated by these examples:

anusvar before ય , realised as ય̣ , as in સંયોગ , saṃyog

anusvar before લ , realised as લ̣ , as in પુંલિંગ , puṅling

anusvar before all other antesth and uṣm characters, realised

as વ̣ ; e.g. સંરક્ષણ વારંવાર અંશ અહિંસા સિંહ  
saṃrākṣaṇ<sup>2</sup> varaṃvar aṃś ahiṃsa siṃh

Reading examples<sup>3</sup>

1. anusvar realised as in note a.

શું હું કંઈ ભોંય ફેંક ખેંચ સાંજ ઉઘ સીંચ ભેંસ  
બાંધ ઝાંખ તેવાંજ માંદું પહોંચ વિંદી યાત્રી લીંબું

2. anusvar realised as in notes b. and c.

આનંદ જેતુ વસંત મેંડ અંદર કંજુસ અંબા સંપ

#### 11. visarg

This modifier, described in the Sanskrit section<sup>4</sup>, does not occur in Gujarati words, but it occurs medially in a few Sanskrit loanwords and is realised as the doubling of the following consonant, as in દુઃખ, dukkh (also written દુખ, dukh) and અંતઃકરણ, antekkerṇ.

1. See Sanskrit, Ch.2,3.1.c.

2. ક્ષ represents k- joined with -ષ . See Ch.3,3.Class 4.i.b.

3. For transcription, see p.169.

4. See Sanskrit, Ch.2,3.1i.

4. The Complete Syllabary.

The traditional order of the characters in the syllabic series is shown in the following table<sup>1</sup>:

અ	આ	ઇ	ઈ	ઉ	ઊ
	એ	ઐ	ઓ	ઔ	
	અં	અઃ			
ક	ખ	ગ	ઘ	ઙ	
ચ	છ	જ	ઝ	ઞ	
ટ	ઠ	ડ	ઢ	ણ	
ત	થ	દ	ધ	ન	
પ	ફ	બ	ભ	મ	
	ય	ર	લ	વ	
	શ	ષ	સ	હ	
		ળ			

The vowel character ઋ is not usually included in the table.

The table in which the vowel characters (except ઋ), and the modifiers added to the character અ, are placed at the head of a series of columns consisting of every consonant character in the akar form, with each of the vowel signs and each of the modifiers, is called in Gujarati the વારાખડી, barakhēḍī, the 'twelve characters'. This table is often recited in schools by children learning to read.

1. Cf. Devanagari table in Sanskrit, Ch. 2, 4.

These two tables show the order in which characters are placed as initial characters of words in dictionaries, which is the same as the order in Sanskrit, except that words beginning with characters with the anusvar are placed after words beginning with the same character without the anusvar, as illustrated below:

Sanskrit: a ai anye aṃṣe aṃhe aka akhe ...

Gujarati: a ai aka akhe ... aṃṣe aṃhe aṃke aṃkhe ...

#### 5. Numerals.

The Gujarati numerals are written thus:

૧	૨	૩	૪	૫	૬	૭	૮	૯	૧૦
1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	10

#### 6. Punctuation.

In prose writing, the same system of punctuation is used as in English prose. The system used in Gujarati verse is the same as the Sanskrit system.<sup>1</sup>

1. See Sanskrit, Ch. 2, 6.



## CHAPTER 3

### CONJUNCT CHARACTERS

Consonant characters may be combined to represent two or more consonants which are to be realised without an intervening vowel. Characters formed by joining other characters are called સંયુક્તાક્ષર (səṃyuktakṣar) by Gujarati grammarians or જોડાક્ષર (jodakṣar) in the teaching of writing in schools. The construction and calligraphy of conjunct characters in the Devanagari script is described in the Sanskrit section<sup>1</sup>. Gujarati conjunct characters are constructed by similar methods, with these modifications:

- i. Some conjunct characters are formed by writing two characters together, without the usual separating space, as in ક્ક , kke.
- ii. When conjunct characters are formed by omitting the upright stroke of the first character<sup>2</sup>, the remaining part of the first character is often written on a lower level than the first part of the second character, as in ગ્ગ , gge , બ્બ , bbe.

#### 1. Contexts of Conjunct Characters in Gujarati.

Conjunct characters occur in Gujarati in the following contexts:

- i. In Gujarati words, that is, words not borrowed from Sanskrit or from modern languages; e.g.

ડાહ્યું	બેચું	નેક્કી	ચિટ્ઠી
ḍahyū	bēcū	nekki	ciṭṭhi

1. See Sanskrit, Ch.3,1.

2. *ibid.*, Ch.3,1.ii.

11. In Sanskrit loanwords, either words used commonly in Gujarati, or learned words used only in the literary language; e.g.

પુસ્તક  
pustak

પત્ર  
patr

ઇશ્વર  
iṣṭvār

111. In loanwords from other languages; e.g.

રેસ્ટો  
resto

ગાર્ડ  
gard

સ્ટેશન  
stēṣan

## 2. Realisation of Conjunct Characters in Gujarati.

Conjunct characters are realised in reading as syllables consisting of two or more consonants followed by a vowel. When an ekar conjunct character occurs as the final character of a word, it is usually realised with an ə-glide, as in જન્મ , jənm' , શાસ્ત્ર , śastr'.<sup>1</sup>

The realisation in modern Gujarati of ekar consonant characters with zero-vowel in certain positions in words gives rise to a problem of spelling. For instance, when a formative particle beginning with a consonant character is added to a verbal base ending in a final ekar consonant character, the final character of the base is realised with zero-vowel. This realisation of the consecutive characters is similar to the realisation of a conjunct character. Similar problems arise in other contexts, where an ekar consonant character is realised with zero-vowel before a following consonant character, and in compound words in which the first part ends in an ekar consonant character and the second part begins with a consonant character. Examples of such words are given below with the various classes of conjunct characters.

1. See above, Ch.2,1.a. and b. This glide is not represented in the transcription of words to which this rule applies.



### 3. Classes of Conjunct Characters in Gujarati.

The conjunct characters used in writing Gujarati are classified in this chapter in the same way as the conjunct characters given in the Sanskrit section<sup>1</sup>. Conjunct characters of all the classes occur in Gujarati, but in some of the classes only a few of the characters are used. Those which are used in writing Gujarati are shown by the examples given in each class, which include some Sanskrit loanwords in frequent use. Some of the reading examples given in the Sanskrit section occur in literary texts as learned loanwords, and these may be transcribed without difficulty in Gujarati characters.

#### Class 1. Two similar characters joined.<sup>2</sup>

Most of the characters of the Gujarati syllabary occur in this class, as 'doubled' characters. The character for -rra is written as ર્ર , the superscribed stroke representing r- preceding another consonant<sup>3</sup>.

A character representing an aspirated consonant is not usually written as the first part of a conjunct character in this class; but in Gujarati writing the characters ર્રખ , khkha , ઢ્ઢ , ṭṭṭha , and ઢ્ઢ્ઢ , dhdhe are often used. The combinations -nne and -mme are represented in some words by writing the anusvar over the character preceding ન્ or મ્ ; e.g.

સંમતિ

sammati

સંનિધિ

sennidhi

but

અન્ન

enn

The following examples illustrate Gujarati words in which two consecutive consonant characters, the first being ekar, are realised

1. See Sanskrit, Ch.3,3.

2. Cf. Sanskrit, Ch.3,3.Class 1.

3. See below, Class 3.iii.a.



in ordinary speech in the same way as conjunct characters:

આગગાડી

ag-gaḍii<sup>1</sup>

ગામમાં

gam-mā<sup>2</sup>

ભાવવું

bhav-vū<sup>3</sup>

બહેનનો

bēhen-no<sup>2</sup>

Reading examples<sup>4</sup>

નક્કી લક્કડ ચોખ્ખો લગ્ન વચ્ચે બચ્ચું ઈચ્છા ગરબો સમજડ  
ઉઝ્ઝતી ઘુઝો ભટ્ટી ચિટ્ટી ખડકો પિત્તા પથ્થર મુદ્દલ<sup>5</sup> બુઝિ<sup>5</sup>  
ઓઝ્યો અન્ન ચખ્ય બબ્બો હિમ્મત રચ્ચત દેલ્લો હાંલ્લી હિસ્સો

### Class 2. Two vergiily characters joined.

The characters of this class occur for the most part in Sanskrit and other loanwords. Those which are most frequently used in writing Gujarati are given below, in the same groups as the characters given in the Sanskrit section<sup>6</sup>.

1.      ક્ત      ળ      પ્ત      ત્ત      બ્ત  
         -kte      -tke      -pte      -tpe      -bde

- ii. Most of the characters corresponding to those of this group in the Sanskrit section, under ii.a., are written in literary Gujarati, representing homorganic nasal consonants. This method of representing nasal consonants preceding vergiily characters is generally used only in writing Sanskrit loanwords. An alternative method, representing nasal consonants of each class by writing the anusvar on the preceding character, has been described above<sup>7</sup>.

Of the characters given in the Sanskrit section under ii.b., only

ક્ત, જ્ત and ભ, -tne occur in Gujarati. The character ક્ત

is not calligraphically a conjunct character and is often

1. Compound word.      2. Noun with suffix.      3. Verbal form.  
4. For transcription, see p.169.      5. The second character in these words is formed from the Devanagari character for *ḍa*; Cf. Sanskrit, Ch.2,1.1.  
6. See Sanskrit, Ch.3,3.C1.2.      7. See above, Ch.2,3.1.b.

included in the syllabary. In Gujarati dictionaries words beginning with ક્ષ are placed after words beginning with જો . ક્ષ is often realised as gya .

iii. Some of the characters of this group occur in Sanskrit loanwords:

કમે	ગને	ધને	તમે	દમે	પને
-kme	-gne	-ghne	-tme	-dme	-pne

iv. Of this group, only નમે , -nme , occurs in Gujarati, though

કમે , -kme and ધમે , -ghme may occur in learned loanwords in a literary text.

The following examples illustrate the realisation of consecutive consonant characters, when the first is akar, in the same way as conjunct characters:

શક્તિ	શક્તી	ગુપ્ત	આપતો
ʃəkti	ʃək-tii <sup>1</sup>	gupt	ap-to <sup>1</sup>

Reading examples<sup>2</sup>

શુક્તિ ભક્તિ તત્કાલ ચમત્કાર ગુપ્ત તત્પર ચબ્દ ચલ  
લખ રુકિમણી જન્મ રક્ષુ સુંદર પત્ન્ય આરમ્ભ પરતુ  
સમ્યન્ધ જ્ઞાન

Class 3. Characters joined with antesth characters.

1. Characters joined with following ય .<sup>3</sup>

All the characters of the Gujarati syllabary, except ડ and ળ occur in this class. Many of the characters occur in verbal forms in which the suffix યો , and other forms of this suffix, are added to the verbal base by joining the character of the suffix with the final character of the base.

1. Verbal form. 2. For transcription, see p.169.  
3. See Sanskrit, Ch.3,3.Class 3.1.



Reading examples<sup>1</sup>

ક્યારે શક્યો ખ્યાલું નાખ્યો લાખું મુઘ્યું સીંચ્યો પુઘ્યો  
 જ્યારે ખોજ્યું સૂઝ્યું છુટ્યો ઊઠ્યું પડ્યો કાઢ્યો ભાડ્યો  
 જત્યો ત્યાં આખું વિદ્યા શોધ્યો મધ્યે માન્યો ન્યાય ખ્યારે  
 આખું હાંફ્યો કબ્બું ચોભું ગમ્યું સૂર્ય કર્યો બોલ્યો આનંડ  
 ભાનંડ અવશ્ય પીરસ્યું મનુષ્ય કલું માખ્યું નિકળ્યો અદૃશ્ય

ii. Characters joined with following વ .<sup>2</sup>

Only a few of the Gujarati characters are combined with વ , and these occur only in Sanskrit loanwords. The realisation of a final əkar consonant character in some compound words formed with the words વાલા, vala and વાર, var, illustrate the realisation of consecutive consonant characters, when the first is əkar, in the same way as conjunct characters of this class; e.g.

પકવાન	અઠવાડિયું	ડાકવાલા	સોમવાર	બુધવાર
pəkvann	əṭh'vaḍiyū	ḍak'vala	som'var	budh'var

Reading examples<sup>3</sup>

સત્ત્વ પૃથ્વી સર્વ ઈશ્વર<sup>4</sup> વિશ્વાસ સ્વભાવ  
 સ્વપ્ન દ્વેષ ધ્વનિ તત્ત્વજ્ઞાન

## iii. Characters joined with preceding ર્ or following ર .

a. ર્ preceding another character.<sup>5</sup>

These conjunct characters are formed by placing a stroke known as રેફ, reph, above the character before which ર્ is to be realised as the first of two or more consecutive consonants. The place of

1. For transcription, see p.169.

3. For transcription, see p.169.  
see Sanskrit, Ch.2,1.iii.

2. See Sanskrit, Ch.3,3.Cl.3.ii.

4. For the character શ્ચ, śa,

5. See Sanskrit, Ch.3,3.Cl.3.iii.



this stroke on Gujarati characters, whether *ekar* or written with vowel signs, corresponds with the place of the stroke on the Devanagari characters, and the order of writing the strokes of characters with *reph* is the same as the order described in the Sanskrit section<sup>1</sup>. The characters of this class which occur in Gujarati are illustrated in the reading examples given below.

The following words illustrate the realisation of consecutive consonant characters, when the first is *ekar*, in the same way as conjunct characters written with *reph* are realised:

કર્તા	કરતા	ધર્મ	ઘરમાં	વર્ણ	નિસરણી
kerta	kər-ta <sup>2</sup>	dharm	ghar-mā <sup>3</sup>	vern	nisər'ṇii

Reading examples<sup>4</sup>

તકે મૂર્ખ વર્ગ અર્જિત ગર્જના વર્ણન પૂર્ણ વર્તન અર્થ  
વિદ્યાર્થી નિદ્ય અર્ધ અર્પણ ધર્મ દર્મિયાં ખર્વ પૂર્વ હર્ષ

b. ૨ following another character.

These characters are formed by writing a short diagonal stroke either against the upright stroke of a character, or below a rounded character.<sup>5</sup> Two characters similar to the Devanagari characters are used in forming these conjunct characters: ૬ for *de*, and ૭ for *ṣa*.<sup>6</sup> The examples given below illustrate the characters of this class which occur in Gujarati, mostly in Sanskrit and English loanwords.

Reading examples<sup>7</sup>

કમ રાત્ર અંક સમુદ્ર પ્રેમ પ્રાણી તણ ત્રીજું શુક્રવાર  
શ્રમ આવણ આગ્રહ ત્રાંવું ઇંગ્રેજ નમ્ર પ્રમાણે ભ્રમર

1. See Sanskrit, Ch. 3, 3. Cl. 3. iii. a. Calligraphy. 2. Verbal form.  
3. Noun with suffix. 4. For transcription, see p. 169.  
5. Cf. Sanskrit, Ch. 3, 3. Cl. 3. iii. b. 6. *ibid.*, Ch. 2, 1. 1. and iii.  
7. For transcription, see p. 169.

iv. Characters with preceding લ or following લ .<sup>1</sup>

The characters of this class which are used in writing Gujarati are illustrated in the reading examples given below.

## a. લ preceding.

Characters with preceding લ are not usually written in Gujarati except in a few Sanskrit loanwords. Some words are written either with a conjunct character or with separate characters, such as બલકે ,  
bolke , or બલકે , bel'ke.

In representing colloquial speech forms in modern Gujarati, the character લે is sometimes written for લા, as in લેર , lher ,  
for લેર , leher , and other similar words.

## b. લ following.

Characters combined with following લ occur mainly in Sanskrit and English loanwords.

The following words illustrate the realisation of consecutive consonant characters, when the first is ekar, in the same way as conjunct characters of this class:

બિહુલ	વાગ્ગામી	બદલી	આમલી
bil'kul	vaḷ'gaṃi	bed'lii	am'lii

Reading examples<sup>2</sup>

કાલ્પના કલ્પના કોલ્હો કલ્હી સ્વલ્પ શિલ્પ  
પ્રલ્હાદ શ્લોક ક્લેશ ક્લાસ ગ્લાસ સ્લેટ

1. Cf. Sanskrit, Ch.3,3.Cl.3.iv.a. and b.

2. For transcription, see p. 169.



Class 4. vargiy characters joined with preceding or following unam characters.

i. vargiy characters joined with શ, ષ or સ.<sup>1</sup>

a. શ, ષ or સ preceding a vargiy character.

The characters of this class which occur in Gujarati, mostly in Sanskrit loanwords, are illustrated by the examples given below. The formation of the characters is similar to the formation of the Devanagari characters of this class, using the form શ<sup>2</sup> for શ, and using the form ષ<sup>3</sup> for ષ when combined with શ.

b. ષ or સ following a vargiy character.

Only a few of the Gujarati characters occur in this class. Those which occur are illustrated in the examples below. The character ક્ષ, kṣa, is not calligraphically a conjunct character and is often included in the Gujarati varṇamālā.<sup>4</sup> Words beginning with this are placed in Gujarati dictionaries after words beginning with ક્વ.

The following words illustrate the realisation of consecutive consonant characters, when the first is ēkar, in the same way as conjunct characters:

નુકસાન	નાસતો	ભેંસનો	દિવસમાં
nuk'san	nas-to <sup>5</sup>	bhēṣe-no <sup>6</sup>	diveś-mā <sup>7</sup>

The character સહે is written in some words for સહે to represent the pronunciation in modern Gujarati of such words as સહેલ, sehēl (સહેલ), and સહેજ, sēhej (સહેજ).

1. Cf. Sanskrit, Ch.3,3.Class 4.i.a. and b. 2. ibid., Ch.2,1.11i.  
3. ibid., Ch.2,1.1. ca-vergeh. 4. Cf.note on ક્ષ, under Cl.2.11.b.  
5. Verbal form. 6. Noun with suffix. 7. Noun with particle.



Reading examples<sup>1</sup>

- a. મશ્કરી પશ્ચિમ યજ્ઞમા પશ્ચાન્તાપ આશ્વર્ય દુષ્ટ સ્પષ્ટ  
પુષ્કળ દુષ્કર્મ રાષ્ટ્ર વસ્તુ રસ્તો પુસ્તક શાસ્ત્ર સ્ત્રી  
સ્પળ સ્પિતિ તિરસ્કાર સંસ્કૃત સ્મરણ રાસ્ત
- b. પરીક્ષા રક્ષણ અક્ષર લક્ષ્મણ કૃષ્ણ અખસરા ઈન્સાફ

ii. હ preceding or following anunasik ('nasal') characters<sup>2</sup>.

a. હ preceding.

Two characters occur with preceding હ, in the Sanskrit loan-words બ્રાહ્મણ, brahmaṇ, and ચિહ્ન, cihn

b. હ following.

The characters which occur with following હ are illustrated in the examples given below. The characters નહ and મહ are sometimes written to represent the tendency to aspiration in some words in colloquial speech.

Reading examples<sup>3</sup>

નહાવું સામ્હે [સામે] તમ્હે [તમે]

Gujarati prose passage<sup>4</sup>

જોડણી શાસ્ત્રપૂત હોય, બહોળી શિષ્ટ રૂઢિને અનુસરતી હોય, એ બધું જેટલું આવશ્યક છે તેટલું જ, અથવા તેના કરતાંયે, જેવી હોય તેવી પણ જોડણી બહુજનમાન્ય અને નિશ્ચિત થઈ જાય, એ વધારે આવશ્યક છે. આજે અંગ્રેજ ભાષાની જોડણી બધી રીતે શાસ્ત્રશુદ્ધ છે એમ તો કહેવાય જ નહિ; કેટલીયે બાબતમાં

1. For transcription, see p.169.

3. For transcription, see p.170.

2. Cf. Sanskrit, Ch.3,3.Class 4.ii.

4. Sārtha Jōḍḍikōsh, by Maganlal Prabhudās Desai, 4th ed. 1949, p.16, pub. Navajivan Prakāshan Mandir, Ahmedabad.

એ ઢંગધડા વગરની છે. પણ તે પ્રજામાં સંગઠન તથા તાલીમ-  
બદ્ધતા હોવાને લીધે ત્યાં જોડણીમાં અરાજકતા ફેલાવા પામી  
નથી. અંગ્રેજ ભાષાની જોડણી સર્વમાન્ય થઈ ચુકી છે, તેથી  
જોડણીની બાબતમાં બધે એકધારું લખાણ જડી આવે છે. એક  
વાર અરાજકતામાંથી બચવા ઉત્પન્ન થઈ ગઈ એટલે પછી  
સુધારા કરવા જ હોય તો તે કામ પ્રમાણમાં થણું સહેલું થઈ  
જાય છે.

સુધારાનો પ્રવાહ માન્ય વિકલ્પોની મર્યાદામાં જ વહી શકે  
છે. વખત જતાં વિકલ્પોમાં અમુક જાતની જોડણી જ વધારે  
ફેલાય છે અને બીજા વિકલ્પો અવમાન્ય ન હોય તોપણ  
વપરાશને આભાવે કાલગ્રસ્ત થઈ જાય છે અને ખરી પડે છે.



Transcription of Reading ExamplesChapter 2.

- 1.i.        nē        chē        jē        dhē  
ghen    pēg        nēkh    gēj        cēd        mēth    kēkh    bhēn    chēth    dhēg  
jhēt    ghēd        dhēn    tēk        thēd        dēm        bēn        phēt    jēd        pēn  
bēden    pēkēd    jhēdēp    mēdēd    cēmēn    phētēk    tēgēd    gēmēn  
jēmēn    bēgēd    nēgēd    dhēmēk    dēpēt    tēnēkh    bhējēn    pēthēn  
dhēd'pēn    bhēt'kēn    cēk'mēk    jhēt'pēt    bēd'chēt    gēj'kēn  
1.ii.    rēth    pēr    lēkh    ghēr    khēl    bēr    rēj    rēv    lēg    vey  
yāv    lēy    chēr    jhēl    vēr    rēd    kēl    cēy    bhēr    jēy  
lēcēk    chēlēr    vērēdh    jhērēn    bhērēd    vēkhēt    rētēn    tērēph  
rēvēd    vērēd    lēgēn    yāvēn    cērēk    pēlēkh    pēvēn    bhērēn  
kēl'tēr    lēg'bhēg    pēd'tēr    lēd'kēn    tēr'tēj    dēph'tēr  
1.iii.    rēs    jēth    sēdh    jēn    hēs    dēj    yēj    sēr    jēt  
lēsēn    hēlēk    sērēs    hērēkh    jēpēth    sēmēy    hērēn    phērēs  
sēm'jēn    jēr'bet    sēr'kēt    kēs'rēt    hēr'kēt    vēkēt'sēr  
phēl    dēl    hēl    bēlēd    dhēvēl    kēmēl    pēr'vēl    hēl'kēt  
2.i.        a        e        ao        eo  
is        uun        ek        ap        ēdh        rēn        aj        ēvth  
uucēk    iyēl        uuṭh    ēth        ēvśēdh    ogh    ubhēd    iij  
ēyḍ    mēu        lēii    dēii        gēii        jēiie    dēiie    lēiie  
2.ii.    ke    pēy    sēv    che    ja    ghii    te    ca    je    bhuu    dho    jii  
jēth    roj    ṭhiik    duudh    lok    ruup    ciiij    drq̄h    hit    jay  
god    lav    nēhi    bēhu    mēne    pēchii    aje    uubho    uge  
apo    rṣi    rtu    sēve    teo    bhail    chiie    juo  
bāyrii    goḷo    varu    pēyso    muke    rajii    pelo    dīvo    krpa    viṣe  
nīfālē    ujanii    ruupiyo    tabedarii    hōjiyarii    bhaloe  
p.149.    ek'tha    ap'ne    bek'rii    nēk'fo    pog'lii    al'su    kēs'biī  
pay'lii    jēm'ruk̄h    pay'dēl    kōṭ'val    guj'ratii    kēsēb'cor  
chētēr    chēt're    chētēr-vii    pēkēd    pēk'do    pēkēd-vo  
pēsēr    pēs'riine    pēsēr-vii    mok'lii    mokēl-vii



3.1. fū hū kṣii bhōy phēk khēc sāj ūgh sīc bhēs  
bādh jhākh tevāj mādū pēhōc vīṭii thaū libū

ii. anēd jentu vēsēt mēṇḍ ēnder kēnjus ēmba sēmp

### Chapter 3.

#### Class 1.

nēkkii lēkkēḍ cōkkho lēggū vēcce bēccū iccha gēccho sējjēḍ  
ujjhetii chuṭṭo bhēṭṭii ciṭṭhii khēḍḍo pittēḷ pēṭṭher muddēḷ buddhi  
oddho ēnne cēppu bēbbe himmet reyyēt chello hāllii hisso

#### Class 2.

jukti bhēkti tētkal cēmetkar gupt tēṭper jēbd yetn  
lēgn rukmiṇii jēnm rēṅṅ sunder pēnth arēmbh pērentu  
sēmbēndh jṇan

#### Class 3.i.

kyare jēkyo khyālū nākhyo lagyū sughyū sīcyo puchyo  
jyare khojyū suujhyū chuṭyo uuṭhyū pēdyo kaḍhyo bhānyo  
jīityo tyā athyū vidya jōdhyo mēdhye manyo nyay pyare  
apyū hāphyo dēbyū thobhyū gēmyū suury kēryo bolyo avyū  
bhavyū ēvējy pīir'syū mēnuṣy kēhyū mēlyū nikēlyo ēdrjy

#### Class 3.ii.

settṽ prthvii sērv iifvēr vijvas svēbhav  
svēpn dvej dhvēni tēttvējṇan

#### Class 3.iii,

a. tērk muurkh vērg ērjit gērjena vērnēn puurn vērten ērth  
vidyarthii nirdēy ērdhū ērpēṇ dhērm dērmīyā khērv puurve hēṣ

b. krēm rātr cēndr sēmudr prēm prāṇii trēṇ trīijū jukrēvar  
jrēm jrāvēṇ agrēhē trābū ingrējii nēm prēmāṇē bhērēm

#### Class 3.iv.

phalgun kēlpēna kolha kēlḥēii svēlp jilp prēlhad  
flok klēf klas glas slēṭ

#### Class 4.i.

a. mējkerii pējcim cējma pējcattap ajcery duṣṭ spēṣṭ  
puṣkēḷ duṣkērm rāṣṭr vēstu resto pustēk jastr strīi sthēḷ  
sthiti tirēskar sēmēkrt smērēṇ rast

b. pēriikṣa rēkṣēṇ ēkṣēr lēkṣmēṇ krṣṇ ēpsēra insaph

Class 4.11.

nhavũ samhe (same) tamhe (tome)

Gujarati prose passage

jodanīi jastropunt hoy, bahajīi jist ruqdhine anuseratīi hoy, e  
 badhũ jet'liũ avajyek che tet'li j, ethava tana ker'tāye, jevīi hoy  
 tevīi peṇ jodanīi behujanemany one nijcit theīi jay, e vedhare avajyek  
 che. aje engrejīi bhaganīi jodanīi badhīi riite jastrejuddh che em  
 to kehavaye j nehi; ket'liiye babet-mā e dhenqedheḍa veger-nīi che.  
 peṇ te praja-mā sangetḥen tetha taliim'badheta hovane liidhe tyā  
 jodanīi-mā arajeketa phelava pami nethīi. engrejīi bhaganīi jodanīi  
 sarvamany theīi cukīi che, tethīi jodanīinīi babet-mā badhe ek'dharũ  
 lekharũ jodīi ave che. ek var arajeketa-māthīi vyavastha utpenn theīi  
 gēi et'le pechīi sudhara kerva j hoy to te kam premar-mā gherũ sehaldũ  
 theīi jay che.

sudharāno pravahe many vikelpoṇīi meryada-mā j vehīi jake che.  
 vekhet jatā vikelpo-mā emuk jat-nīi jodanīi j vedhare ruqdh thay che  
 one biija vikelpo avomany ne hoy topeṇ vopera-j-ne abhave kalegrast  
 theīi jay che one kharīi peḍe che.

# BENGALI SECTION

PREPARED IN COLLABORATION WITH  
MISS G. M. SUMMERS

*formerly Lecturer in Bengali in the  
School of Oriental and African Studies  
University of London*





## CHAPTER 1

### ARRANGEMENT OF THE SYLLABARY

The Bengali script, as a writing system, is based on the same syllabic system as the Devanagari script. The characters of the syllabary are arranged in the same way, and though the majority of the characters seem at first sight to be very different in line and form from those of the Devanagari script, some of them are recognisably of the same origin.

The same system of notation is used in this section for the transcription of the Bengali script as that used in the Sanskrit section, and in the transcription of the modern languages which are written with the Devanagari script. As in the Devanagari script, each character of the Bengali script represents a syllable consisting either of a vowel or of a consonant followed by the first vowel of the vowel series. This vowel, in Bengali as in Sanskrit, is usually referred to in English textbooks as the 'inherent' vowel. In referring to a consonant character of the Bengali syllabary, or in reciting the syllabary, the inherent vowel is, however, the vowel which is usually represented by the phonetic symbol 'ɔ'. In order to preserve uniformity in the systematic transcription throughout this work the symbol 'ə' is used in this section to represent the inherent vowel, and as there are various other differences in the quality of vowel sounds used in realising the Bengali characters, the systematic transcription

in this section is accompanied, both in the examples given in the text and in those given for practice in reading, by a phonetic transcription. The phonetic transcription is given in brackets to distinguish it from the systematic roman transcription.

In the roman syllabary given below, the syllables are represented in the table in the systematic transcription used in the Sanskrit syllabary. For the transcription of certain additional characters which do not occur in the Sanskrit syllabary, and for the phonetic transcription, the following symbols, not included in the All-India Roman Notation, are used in this section:-

i. Systematic roman notation.

ɽə and ɽhə , for the retroflex flapped consonants, represented in the script by modified forms of the characters corresponding to də and dhə<sup>1</sup>.

ya , for the modified form of the character corresponding to ya , and realised in various ways, described in Chapter 2.<sup>2</sup>

ṃ , for the modifier referred to as the anusvar.<sup>3</sup>

ii. Phonetic notation.

(ɔ), for the realisation of the inherent vowel in most contexts.

(æ), for the realisation, in certain contexts, of the vowel transcribed in roman notation as a ; and for the realisation, in special contexts, of the vowel transcribed as e .

(~), superscribed to vowel symbols, to represent nasalisation.

('), to represent the realisation of the inherent vowel, medially, as an ə-glide, or as zero-vowel, in certain positions.

1. See Ch.2,1.1.

2. ibid., 1.ii. antastha ya.

3. See Ch.2,3.ii.



## Bengali Syllabary in Roman Notation

CONSONANTS with ə			1 Velar	2 Palatal	3 Retro- flex	4 Dental	5 Labial
Plosives	Voiceless	Unaspirated	kə	cə	ʈə	tə	pə
		Aspirated	khə	chə	ʈhə	thə	phə
	Voiced	Unaspirated	gə	jə	ɖə <sup>1</sup>	də	bə
		Aspirated	ghə	jhə	ɖhə <sup>1</sup>	dhə	bhə
	Nasal		ŋə	(ɲə) <sup>2</sup>	ɳə	nə	mə
Semivowels				yə <sup>3</sup>	rə	lə	və <sup>4</sup>
Fricatives				ʃə	ʂə <sup>5</sup>	sə	
Aspirate			hə				
VOWELS		ə    a	i    ii	u    uu	e    əʏ	o    əʋ	r <sup>6</sup>
MODIFIERS		Nasal - ŋ    and    ~    Aspirated - h					

Notes on the syllables marked 1 - 6 in the above table:

1. The characters corresponding to these two syllables are modified to represent the medial and final realisation of these characters as flapped sounds, written as ɖə and ɖhə in the transcription.
2. The character corresponding to this syllable is not written as a single character in Bengali, but only in combination with other characters, illustrated below in Chapter 3.

3. As the character corresponding to this syllable is always realised in the same way as the character corresponding to *je* , a modified form of it is used to represent *ye* in certain contexts. The use of this modified character, referred to as 'antesthe *ye*', and transcribed in this work as *ye* , is discussed in Chapter 2.2.11.
4. The character corresponding to this syllable is the same as the character corresponding to the syllable *be* .
5. The character corresponding to this syllable occurs only in Sanskrit loanwords.
6. This vowel, syllabic *r* , occurs only in Sanskrit loanwords.

The characters of the Bengali script are arranged in the same groups as the syllables given in the above table, and the terms used by Bengali grammarians in describing the characters and their realisation in reading are similar to those given in the Sanskrit section. These terms are Sanskrit loanwords, and when they are realised in reading, the same conventions are observed as those used in modern Bengali reading from a text. They sound, therefore, somewhat different from the Sanskrit terms, though when the Sanskrit and the Bengali terms are placed side by side, they are recognisable as loanwords. The following examples illustrate the similarities and differences between the two sets of terms, in script and in systematic and phonetic transcription:

Sanskrit	अक्षरम्	ekṣaṛam	Bengali	অক্ষর	ekṣara, (okkhor)
	विरामः	viramaḥ		বিরাম	virama (biram)
	वर्गः	varḡha		বর্গ	verga (bargo)
	अन्तःस्थ	antaḥstha		অন্তস্থ	antastha (ontostho)
	ऊष्मन्	uṣman		ঊষ্ম	uṣma (uffṣ)
	व्यञ्जनम्	vyenjanam		ব্যঞ্জন	vyenjene (bhanjon)



## Bengali Calligraphy.

In the modern teaching of Bengali writing, ordinary pens are generally used, and consequently little attention is paid to the balance or direction of the broad and thin strokes. Formerly, however, writing was taught with a broad pen such as that described in the notes on calligraphy in the Sanskrit section<sup>1</sup>. Though the relative position of the broad and thin strokes is not so strictly adhered to in writing Bengali as in writing the Devanagari script, the general direction of them is the same as that illustrated in those notes.

There is a conventional order of writing the strokes in each character; the first stroke in writing most of the characters begins at the top left hand side and the last stroke brings the pen to the top right hand side so that it is possible to pass straight on to the beginning of the next character. If a character has a horizontal head-stroke, or is completed with a short horizontal stroke at the top right hand side, this stroke is written last and carried on to the first stroke of the next character in a word; when such a stroke is placed on the left hand side of the character, it is written first. This head-stroke is referred to as the 'matra'. The pen should be lifted as rarely as possible in writing a character, or consecutive characters. All the characters are written below the line, if ruled paper is used, and the regular alignment is by the top of the characters.

The printed forms of the characters, given in the tables in Chapter 2, are not usually used in manuscript. The corresponding cursive forms of the characters, used in writing, are given below the

---

1. See Sanskrit section, Introduction.



printed forms, with notes on calligraphy when necessary. The examples given below illustrate the general order of strokes in writing the characters, some typical forms, and the small but important differences to be noted between characters which have some similarity of form.

1.	ব।	—	ব	ব	য।	২	য	য	
	ট।	৮	ট	ট	উ।	৬	ড	উ	
2.	ব	র	ক	কু	কু	ঝ	য	ষ	ফ
	চ	ঢ	ট	চ	ঠ	এ	ক্র	ক্র	ঞ
	ড	উ	ড	জ	ঙ	হ	ই	থ	ঐ
	ত	অ	ভ	ভ	ভ	বু	ভু	গু	গু
	দ	ঝ	দ	ঝ	ব	ল	হ	থ	প্র
			ক্ষ	ম	দা	ক্ষ	ক্ষ	ক্ষ	ক্ষ

## CHAPTER 2

### CHARACTERS OF THE SYLLABARY

The Bengali characters are described in this chapter under the same headings as the Devanagari characters in the Sanskrit section: Consonant Characters, Vowel Characters and Signs, and Modifiers.<sup>1</sup>

#### 1. Consonant Characters.

The consonant characters are arranged in three groups: *vergiiya* (*borgiyo*) characters, *entastha* (*ontostho*) characters, and *uṣṣma* (*uṣṣō*) characters. In the form in which they are given in the syllabary, they are realised as syllables consisting of an initial consonant followed by the first vowel of the vowel series, represented in the roman table as *e*. The characters are described as 'akar' (*akar*), that is, 'ending in *e*'. Each character is referred to as the syllable which it represents, with the addition of the particle '-kar'; for example, *ke-kar*, *te-kar*, *pe-kar*. When a character is to be realised without the inherent vowel, that is, as the consonant element of the syllable only, a short diagonal stroke is written at the foot of the character. This mark is called 'hasenta' (*hoṣonto*)<sup>2</sup>, and characters written with this mark are referred to thus: क् is 'ke-e hasenta' (*ke-e hoṣonto*)<sup>3</sup>, ग् is 'ge-e hasenta' (*ge-e hoṣonto*), and so on. In reading words, *akar* consonant characters are realised in various

---

1. Compare Sanskrit section, Chapter 2.

2. 'ending in a consonant'. Cf. Sanskrit Ch.2.1. *virameḥ* and *helanta*.

3. 'hasenta in ke'. See also below, under 1.



contexts with zero-vowel, but the hasante is not usually written with such characters in modern Bengali, as it is assumed that the reader can recognise from a knowledge of the spoken language which characters are to be realised in this way. In some verbal forms<sup>1</sup>, however, the hasante is often written with characters that are realised with zero-vowel, and it is used in writing Sanskrit texts in Bengali script.<sup>2</sup>

The absence of the hasante in a consonant character cannot, however, be taken to indicate that the character is to be realised with the inherent vowel. Although the writing system of Bengali has much in common with the Sanskrit writing system, owing to its origin, the use of a system so closely related to the Sanskrit system for writing a modern spoken language makes necessary a number of conventions both of spelling and of realising the characters in reading. Some of these conventions concern the realisation of *ekar* consonant characters. The Bengali consonant characters, as they are given in the syllabary, are realised, as described above, in the same way as the Sanskrit characters. When they occur in words, however, they are realised in various ways: as consonants with the inherent vowel, as consonants with zero-vowel, or as consonants with a glide-vowel. Further, the inherent vowel, represented in the systematic roman notation by *a*, is realised in some contexts as (o) and in others as (u). This varying realisation of *ekar* consonant characters depends upon certain factors of which a general indication is given in the notes following the first table of consonant characters<sup>3</sup> and in special notes in the discussion

1. These verbal forms are discussed below, under 11.

2. Rules recognised by the University of Calcutta concerning the writing of the hasante are given in the Bengali dictionary চলিতকা (colontika), appendix, page 38, sub-section 4.

3. See below, under 1., Realisation of *ekar* consonant characters.



of vowel characters and vowel signs<sup>1</sup>; but in reading a Bengali text the realisation of these characters in many words can be determined only by a knowledge of the spoken language.

1. Characters of the vergiye group ( বর্গীয় )<sup>2</sup>

This group consists of twentyfive consonant characters representing syllables consisting of an initial plosive consonant followed by the inherent vowel. These characters fall into five classes, বর্গ , verge<sup>3</sup>, according to the five positions of articulation. The table of these five classes may be compared with the Sanskrit table of vergiye consonant characters.

ক - বর্গ ka-verge <sup>4</sup>	ক ka	খ khe	গ ge	ঘ ghe	ঙ -nge
চ - বর্গ ca-verge	চ ca	ছ che	জ je	ঝ jhe	ঞ -ne
ট - বর্গ ta-verge	ট ta	ঠ the	ড de	ঢ dhe	ণ -ne
ত - বর্গ te-verge	ত te	থ the	দ de	ধ dhe	ন ne
প - বর্গ pe-verge	প pe	ফ phe	ব be	ভ bhe	ম me

1. See below, under 2.11.

2. (borgiyo). Cf. Sanskrit, Ch.2.

1.1. 3. (bargo). Cf. Sanskrit, Ch.2, 1.1. 4. (ka-bargo, etc.).

The characters given in this table are those used in printing. The corresponding cursive forms, used in handwriting, are given below. The cursive forms differ from the printed forms mainly in an adaptation of the order and direction of strokes that makes it possible to join each character to the following character by means of a small head-stroke<sup>1</sup>. The order of strokes is given with any character in which this order is not evident from the form of the character itself.

ka-verge:	ক	খ	গ	ঘ	ঙ
ca-verge:	চ	ছ	জ	ঝ	ঞ
ta-verge:	ট	ঠ	ড	ঢ	ণ
te-verge:	ত	থ	দ	ধ	ন
pe-verge:	প	ফ	ব	ভ	ম

Calligraphy of characters:

ka	—	২	ক	che	চ	ছ	ছ	je	ঙ	জ	জ
jha	৭	ক	ঝ	the	চ	ঠ	ঠ	pe	২	ন	প
dhe	<	৮	থ	or	<	৮	ধ				

Calligraphy of words:

নদ টক খড় পথ বম তট ঘন জড় তত  
ফটক বতক জগৎ বচমচ গড়গড় চটপট

Characters written with the hasante: ক, k-, ঙ, ঘ-, ম, m-. The hasante is not written with ত, te. The consonant t- without a following vowel is represented as ঞ. This character is referred to as খণ্ড ত, khaṇḍe te(khaṇḍe to).<sup>2</sup>

1. See notes on calligraphy, Ch.1. 2. (khaṇḍe to), 'broken te'.



The character ঙ , ŋe , does not occur initially, but it occurs medially and finally in a few Bengali words and is often written with the hesente.

The character ঞ , ñe , occurs only in Sanskrit loanwords, in combination with other characters<sup>1</sup>.

The character ণ , ñe , is realised as (no), except when it is combined with characters of the [e-verge]<sup>2</sup>. It occurs only in Sanskrit loanwords, and never initially.

The character ফ , phe , is usually realised as a bi-labial fricative. When stressed, it is usually realised as a plosive.

The character ভ , bhe , is usually realised as a plosive when initial, but as a bi-labial fricative when medial or final.

The two characters ড , de and ঢ , dhe occur only initially. Modified forms of these characters occur medially and finally. These characters, ঢ , re and ণ , phe are described as ডএ শূন্য ড , de-e sunya re<sup>3</sup>. They are usually placed at the end of the varṇamala, being regarded as separate characters from ড and ঢ .

Realisation of the inherent vowel in ekar consonant characters.<sup>4</sup>

The realisation of ekar consonant characters in various ways, according to the position of the character in a word, and in special phonetic contexts, follows certain general rules. Some of these contexts can be defined only by a detailed phonetic study of the spoken language, and numerous exceptions occur. The rules stated below will, however, give some general guidance for reading.

1. See Ch.3,3.Class 2.11.b. 2. ibid., Class 2.11.a.  
3. (de-e sunno re), 'in de a dot, re', i.e. the re written by adding a dot to de. 4. Further notes on the realisation of ekar consonant characters in special contexts are given below, under iii., and under 2.11.



## a. Initial əkar consonant characters.

An initial əkar consonant character is usually realised with the vowel (o), as in গচ্ , gac(goc), কন্ , kab(kob), unless the character is followed by a final nasal consonant character, when the initial əkar character is usually realised with the vowel (o), as in জন্ , jen(jon).

b. Medial əkar consonant characters.<sup>1</sup>

i. Medial əkar consonant characters in words of three characters, of which the final is əkar, are usually realised with the vowel (o), as in কদম্ , kadem(kodom), নগদ্ , neged(negod)<sup>2</sup>.

ii. Medial əkar consonant characters as the second character of a four character word, are often realised with zero-vowel, or with an ə-glide, as in চকমক্ , cekemake(cak'mok)<sup>3</sup>. Two consecutive əkar consonant characters are not usually both realised with the vowel (o).

## c. Final əkar consonant characters.

i. Final əkar consonant characters are realised in many words with zero-vowel, as in চট্ , cete(cot), কব্ , kebe(kob).<sup>5</sup>

ii. Final əkar consonant characters are realised in some words with the vowel (o). This realisation occurs in words of certain

1. This note refers to words consisting of əkar consonant characters only; further notes are given below, under 2.ii., for the realisation of these characters in words in which vowel signs occur.
2. See S.K.Chatterji, ভাষাপ্রকাশ বাঙ্গালী ব্যাকরণ , bhasaprekasa bangala vyskerena, pp.32ff.; pub. Calcutta University, 1939.
3. For the method used in the phonetic transcription of medial and final characters in words to which these notes refer, see above, Ch.1., and below, after note c.
4. For the realisation of əkar characters in compound words, see note c. below.
5. Final characters realised with zero-vowel are not usually written with the besanta. This mark is used in notes a. and b. to simplify the transcription of examples occurring before the realisation of final characters is discussed.

grammatical categories, summarised later<sup>1</sup>; and in certain other words, usually words of two characters, which can be recognised only by a knowledge of spoken Bengali. e.g. কত , kete(koto). তম , tama(tomo). When such words occur as the first part of a compound word, the final character, though medial in the compound word, is still realised in this way.<sup>2</sup>

The word মত , mete , is realised in two ways, the same written form representing two words of different meaning in the spoken language: মত , (mat), 'idea', 'opinion', or 'purpose', and মত , (moto), 'similar', 'like'.

As the realisation of ekar consonant characters with the vowels (ɔ) and (o) varies not only in the contexts described above, but also in some other contexts which are described later<sup>3</sup>, and some which cannot be defined by any general statement, the following system is used in the phonetic transcription of examples in this work:

- a) Initial ekar consonant characters are transcribed with (ɔ) or with (o), according to note a. above.
- b) Medial ekar consonant characters realised as a syllable with the inherent vowel are transcribed with (ɔ) or with (o), according to note b. above; those realised with zero-vowel or with an e-glide are transcribed thus: (k'), (p').
- c) Final ekar consonant characters realised with zero-vowel are transcribed as final consonants; those which are realised with the vowel (o) are transcribed with (o), according to note c.<sup>4</sup>

---

1. See below, under iii. 2. For examples of such compound words, see below, under ii. Reading examples.  
 3. Further notes on the realisation of ekar consonant characters are given below, under iii. and under 2.ii. Vowel Signs.  
 4. Variations from these general rules may occur in certain words, but such variations are outside the scope of this work.



Reading examples<sup>1</sup>

1. One character words, realised as consonants with the vowel (o).

ক ছ ন প দ ঢ জ ট ত থ থ

2. Two character words.

1. Final characters realised with zero-vowel:

নদ নখ টক পদ খড় ঝড় ঘট পথ তট

- ii. Final characters realised with (o):

কত বড় ঘন পট গত পত জড় নত তত

- iii. Initial characters realised with (o), final with zero-vowel:

বন জন মন কণ

3. Three character words; realised as in note b.i. and c.i.

ফটক কতক জগৎ ঘটক

4. Four character words; realised as in note b.ii. and c.i.

চটপট কটকট কচমচ ঢকমক খটখট

থকথক গড়গড় টপটপ তকতক ধপধপ

11. Characters of the *antastha* group( অন্তস্থ )<sup>2</sup>

There are four characters in this group, associated with four of the *varge*, as shown in the roman syllabary<sup>3</sup>. They may be compared with the Devanagari characters of the corresponding group<sup>4</sup>.

য	র	ল	ব
ye	re	le	ve

Cursive forms: য র ল ব

Words: রথ যত বছর বলম মলম ফলবায়

1. For transcription, see p.226.

2. (*antastha*).

3. See roman table, Chapter 1.

4. See Sanskrit, Ch.2,1.ii.



The character য , transcribed in the roman notation as ye , is realised as (jo). It corresponds, as the first character in this group, to the antestha character य , ya , in the Sanskrit syllabary. It is referred to as 'antestha ye'(antestha jo), to distinguish it from জ , ja , referred to as 'vergiiya ja'(borgiyo jo). The semi-vowel corresponding to the Sanskrit character য is represented in Bengali by a modified form of this character. য় , referred to as 'antestha ye'(antestha o). This character is realised in various ways according to its position and phonetic context, and is discussed later in a special note<sup>1</sup>.

The character ব , transcribed in the roman notation as ve , is realised as (bo). It corresponds, as the fourth character in this group, to the antestha character व , va , in the Sanskrit syllabary. It is referred to in this work as 'antestha ve'(antestha bo) in order to distinguish it, in discussion, from the third character in the pe-verge, 'vergiiya be'(borgiyo bo). Although vergiiya be and antestha ve are the same in form and in realisation, the character is included in the syllabary in both the vergiiya and the antestha groups, and Sanskrit loanwords which are written in the Devanagari script with initial व , va , are placed in Bengali dictionaries in a separate section following words with initial ব্ৰ , la . A knowledge of Sanskrit loanwords is needed in order to recognise which words are to be found among words beginning with vergiiya be and which among those beginning with antestha ve . In the more modern Bengali dictionaries the tendency is to place all words beginning with this character in one section, after words beginning with ফ , pha .

1. See note on antestha ye , under 2.11. below.

entasthe va is, however, recognised as different from vargiya be when it is combined with another character.<sup>1</sup>

Reading examples<sup>2</sup>

1. Of the entasthe characters, only য occurs as a word.

2. Two character words.

1. Final characters realised with zero-vowel:

কল ঘর মল পর বল রক দল রথ ফল

ii. Final character realised with (o):

যত

3. Three character words.<sup>3</sup>

বদল গলদ মলজ নগর গলন

4. Four character words.<sup>4</sup>

খরতর ফলকর কলরব

iii. Characters of the uṣṣma group( উষ )<sup>5</sup>

This group of characters includes three characters realised as fricative consonants with the vowel (o), and one character realised as an aspirate with the vowel (o). The characters are associated with four of the verge, as shown in the roman syllabary.<sup>6</sup> They may be compared with the Devanagari characters of the same group.<sup>7</sup>

শ

ʃə

ষ

ʃə

স

sə

and

হ

hə

Cursive forms:

শ

ষ

স

হ

Words:

শত

শব

সহজ

ঘনরস

দগদগ

1. See Ch.3,3.Class 3.ii.

3. See above, notes b.i. and c.i. c.i. and ii.(compounds).

7. See Sanskrit, Ch.2,1.iii.

2. For transcription, see p.226.

4. See above, notes b.ii. and

5. (uʃʃ).

6. See Ch.1.



The three characters শ, ষ and স are realised as (ʃə), except when they are combined in a conjunct character with certain other characters<sup>1</sup>. They are described, for instance, in spelling, as 'taləvyə ʃə' (talobbo ʃə), 'muurdhənyə ʃə' (murdhonno ʃə) and 'dəntyə sə' (donto ʃə). ষ occurs only in Sanskrit loanwords.

The character হ, he, is the last character of the Bengali syllabary. Two other characters, ক্ষ, kṣə and জ্ঞ, jñə, each representing syllables consisting of two consonants followed by the vowel (ə), are often placed after the consonant characters in the əkṣərəmalā. They do not, however, properly belong to the syllabary, and in this work they are discussed later, in the appropriate classes of conjunct characters<sup>2</sup>.

Reading examples<sup>3</sup>

1. Of the uṣṣmā characters only শ occurs as a word.

2. Two character words.

i. Final character realised with zero-vowel:

শব সব দশ সখ

ii. Final character realised with (o):

শত সম হত হর

3. Three character words<sup>4</sup>

সহর সহজ সরল হলফ

4. Four character words<sup>5</sup>

i. খসখস টসটস তলতল ঢলঢল

ii. সহচর সমতল ঘনরস ঘনকফ মদকট জলকর

1. See Ch.3.3.Cl.4.1.a. 2. ibid. Cl.2.11.b. and Cl.4.1.b.  
3. For transcription, see p.226. 4. Realised as in notes b.i. and c.i. above. 5. Words in line i. realised as in notes b.ii. and c.i.; words in line ii. realised as note c.ii. (compounds).



Realisation of əkar consonant characters in verbal forms.

The realisation of medial and final əkar consonant characters in certain grammatical categories is made according to the general rules given below. No comprehensive statement can be made which covers all categories, but these rules give some guidance in reading from the script. The only complete guide is a knowledge of the spoken language.

a. Verbal bases ending in an əkar consonant character.

i. Verbal bases without suffixes.

The final əkar consonant character of a verbal base is realised with zero-vowel; e.g.

বল	কর	চল	বক
bələ(bəl)	kərə(kər)	calə(cəl)	bəkə(bək)

The form of the verb described grammatically as the 'second person singular of the present imperative, inferior form' is written in the same way as the base, and realised in the same way. The final character of this form of the verb is often written with the həsente; e.g.

বল	বল্	কর	কর্	বক	বক্
bələ or bəl(bəl)		kərə or kər(kər)		bəkə or bək(bək)	

ii. Verbal bases with suffixes.

When a suffix beginning with, or consisting of, a consonant character is added to a verbal base, the final character of the base is realised with zero-vowel or with an ə-glide. Examples of this realisation are given below, under note b.

The grammatical forms described as the 'second person of the simple present tense' and the 'second person of the present imperative' are written in the same way as the verbal base; but

are distinguished from the base in reading aloud by the realisation of the final character with the vowel (o). Examples:

বল , be<sub>le</sub>(bolo), কর , ke<sub>re</sub>(koro), পড় , pe<sub>re</sub>(po<sub>ro</sub>)

This realisation occurs with similar grammatical forms of all verbs which have only *ekar* characters in the base. In the 'second person' of the 'future imperative' in which the first *ekar* character is realised with (o), the final character is written with the vowel sign of o<sup>1</sup>. In the verb বস , ba<sub>se</sub> , the initial character in both grammatical forms is realised with (o); e.g. বস , (bo<sub>so</sub>).

The realisation of the initial *ekar* character of a verbal base with the vowel (o) is sometimes shown by writing the mark ' after the character, as in কর , ke<sub>re</sub>(koro), করো , ke<sub>ro</sub>(koro)<sup>1</sup>.

b. Verbal forms with suffixes consisting of *ekar* consonant characters.

The verbal suffixes ত , te(to), ব , be(bo) and ল , le(lo) are added to verbal bases to form various 'tenses'<sup>2</sup>. In these verbal forms the final *ekar* character of the base is realised as described in note a.i., and if the base consists of two *ekar* consonant characters the initial character also is realised with the vowel (o). Examples:

করব	করত	করল
ke <sub>re</sub> -be(kor'bo)	ke <sub>re</sub> -te(kor'to) <sup>3</sup>	ke <sub>re</sub> -le(kor'lo) <sup>3</sup>

1. See below, 2.ii, note a.ii. 2. Suffixes of the tenses described as 'future simple' (bo), 'past habitual' (to) and 'past indefinite' (lo). 3. In colloquial Bengali the sequence বল , -rl-, arising from the addition of a suffix beginning with ল , or the sequence রত , -rt- arising from the addition of a suffix beginning with ত , to a verbal base ending in র , are realised respectively as (-ll-) and (-tt-), as in the verbal forms করল , (kollo) and করত , (kotto). This realisation would be made in reading from a Bengali text written in the colloquial style. See further notes on the realisation of verbal forms under 2.ii, and later in Ch.3,3.Cl.1.



## 2. Vowel Characters and Vowel Signs.

Vowel characters are written in Bengali, as in Sanskrit, to represent syllables consisting of a vowel only, and vowel signs are added to consonant characters to represent syllables consisting of an initial consonant followed by one of the vowels in the series given below. These characters may be compared with the Devanagari vowel characters and vowel signs, given in the Sanskrit section.<sup>1</sup>

### 1. Vowel Characters.

অ	আ	ই	ঈ	উ	ঊ
ə	a	i	ii	u	uu
	ঋ	এ	ঐ	ও	ঔ
	r <sup>2</sup>	e	əy	o	əy

Cursive forms:

অ আ ই ঈ উ ঊ ঋ এ ঐ ও ঔ  
 অর আর ঈং ঈশ উত ঐব ওদ ঔধ

The superscribed strokes in these characters are written last, starting from the matra and writing upwards.

The characters অ, ə, and আ, a, are referred to as স্বরী অ, sverii ə (fori ə) and স্বরী আ, sverii a (fori a)<sup>3</sup>. The other vowel characters are referred to as the vowel which each represents.

The characters ই and ঊ are described as হ্রস্ব, hrasva<sup>4</sup>, 'short', and the characters ঈ and ঔ are described as দীর্ঘ, diirgha<sup>5</sup>, 'long'. The 'short' and the 'long' vowels are realised in reading with very little distinction of quality, but certain words

1. See Sanskrit, Ch. 2, 2.1. and ii. 2. 'syllabic r'; see Ch. 1. Vowels.  
 3. sverə, 'vowel'; sverii ə, 'vowel-character ə'. For the realisation of the first vowel character in certain contexts, see special notes under ii. below.  
 4. (hrasva).  
 5. (dirgho).



are always written with the 'short' vowels and others always with the 'long' vowels. Examples of pairs of words of which the meaning is distinguished by the writing of the 'short' or the 'long' vowel, and in which a corresponding distinction must be made in reading, are given later.<sup>1</sup>

The vowel ঐ , syllabic r , occurs only in some Sanskrit loan-words. The vowel characters ঐ , syllabic rr , ঐ , syllabic l , and ঐ , syllabic ll , are used in printing Sanskrit texts in Bengali script. The character ঐ is realised as (ri).

The character এ , e , is usually realised as (e), but varies in certain contexts which are described below, under Vowel Signs.

The character ঐ , ঐ , is realised as the diphthong (oi), and the character ঐ , ঐ , is realised as the diphthong (ou).

Reading examples<sup>2</sup>

1. Vowel characters only

আ ই উ এ ঐ ও ঐ

2. Vowel characters and akar consonant characters

i. Final characters realised with zero-vowel:

আট ইট উট আম ঐগ উন এর ওর ঐদ  
ইস ইটল ইতর ঐষৎ উতর উদক এতৎ  
এলম ওতন ঐষধ ঐরত ঐষণ

ii. Final characters realised with (o):

ঐশ ওড় অর অপ এণ ওষ ওত ঐম ঐত অগ  
ইত ইব উখ উত ঐক ওল ওষ

1. See below, under ii. Vowel Signs, Reading examples.

2. For transcription of examples, see p.227.

## ii. Vowel Signs.

Vowel signs, corresponding to the vowel characters, are given below added to the consonant character ক . As the vowel *a* is the inherent vowel of each of the consonant characters in the form in which they are given in the syllabary, there is no vowel sign corresponding to the vowel character অ .

কা	কি	কী	কু	কূ	কৃ	কে	কৈ	কো	কৌ
ka	ki	kii	ku	kuu	kr	ke	kəy	ko	kəv

Special forms of some of the characters with vowel signs:

গু	রু	রূ	শু	হু	হ্র
gu	ru	ruu	ju	hu	hr

The vowel signs corresponding to the characters ঞা , ঞা and ঞ , used in writing Sanskrit, added to ক , are কৃ , কৃ and কন্ .

Vowel signs which are placed on the left side of the consonant character with which they are to be realised are written before the consonant character; other signs are added after the consonant character has been written. The order of writing the strokes in characters with vowel signs is illustrated in these cursive forms:

বগ তা মি সি দী তী গে নে নৈ শৌ  
 বারী ঘপ বেশী আবার অনেক আপনি বেড়াতে  
 রঙনা সবশনে শিখতে আমাদের তোমরাও দুহুনেই

Characters with vowel signs are referred to in spelling thus:

কে , (ka-e ekar), 'the sign of এ in ক'; গু , (ga-e hrōjjo ukar).

The sign of syllabic r is referred to as (rikar) or (riphola).<sup>1</sup>

1. For examples of spelling words, see below, end of Ch.3.



Reading examples<sup>1</sup>

চা খু সে গো কু কি শী মো নু ছি  
 ওতু ঋষি আলো দাও যুই ঢেউ রুটি কৃপা গুরু  
 মোটা শিশু রূপা মানে যদি নীতি ছরী নৌকা  
 গোধূলি জীবিকা কুমারী দাগাবাজি কপোতিকা নিকপাধি

Realisation of *ekar* consonant characters, and certain vowel characters in special contexts.

In reading Bengali words from the script, the realisation of *ekar* consonant characters in words which have vowel characters or vowel signs presents certain difficulties; and the realisation of some of the vowel characters and signs varies in special contexts, such as the occurrence of certain other vowels in following syllables. The notes given below provide some general guidance in reading from the script, but a knowledge of Bengali pronunciation is necessary for correct realisation of such words.

a. Realisation of *ekar* consonant characters.<sup>2</sup>

i. When an *ekar* consonant character occurs as the second character of a three character word preceding a final character with a vowel sign, it is usually realised with zero-vowel, or with an *a*-glide;

e.g.	আমরা	বদলে	ঝগড়া
	aməra(am'ra)	bedele(bəd'le)	jhagera(jhag'ra)
	টুকরি	মামলা	সামনে
	tukeri(tuk'ri)	mamela(mam'la)	jaməne(jam'ne)

1. For transcription, see p.227.

2. These notes complete the discussion of the realisation of *ekar* consonant characters; see above, notes given on pp.183 and 190.



When the final character of such words is *ekar*, the medial character is realised as described in previous notes . The following examples illustrate this realisation after an initial character with a vowel sign:

ভারৎ	পিতল	কেবল
bharət(bharot)	pitələ(pitol)	kebələ(kebol)

When an *ekar* consonant character occurs in a word of four or more characters, it is realised with *ə* , with zero-vowel, or with an *ə*-glide, according to its position in relation to characters with vowel signs. The following examples illustrate the varying realisation of these characters in different contexts:

কমবেশ	গোলযোগ	মারপিট
kəməbeʃə(kom'beʃ)	goləjogə(gol'jog)	marəpiṭə(mar'piṭ)
শতকরা	সমজদার	
ʃetekərə(ʃot'kora)	səməjədare(ʃomoj'dar)	

ii. The realisation of the final *ekar* consonant character of verbal bases has been described above<sup>1</sup>. The following verbal forms are further illustrations of this realisation:

পারব	শুনল	আসত
parəbə(par'bo)	ʃunələ(ʃun'lo)	asətə(əʃ'to)

The suffixes in these forms may be written with the *okar*; e.g.

পারবো	শুনলো	আসতো
parebo(par'bo)	ʃunelo(ʃun'lo)	asəto(əʃ'to)

Similarly the forms in which the final character of the base are realised with (o) may be distinguished from the forms in which

the final character is realised with zero-vowel by writing this character with the okar; e.g.

কর	কর	করো	কোরো	করো
kəɾə(kəɾ)	kəɾə(kəɾo)	kəɾo(kəɾo)	kəɾə(kəɾo)	kəɾo(kəɾo)
মার	মার	মারো	লেখ	লেখো
maɾə(maɾ)	maɾə(maɾo)	maɾo(maɾo)	lekħə(lekħo)	lekħo(lekħo)

iii. When two words of different meaning are written in the same way and distinguished only by the realisation of the final ekar character of one of the words with (o), this realisation is often indicated by writing the okar, as in these pairs: কাল (kal), 'time', কাল (kalo) or কালো (kalo), 'black'; ভাল (bhal), 'fore-head', ভাল (bhalo) or ভালো (bhalo), 'good'.

b. The realisation of certain vowel characters and signs is affected by the occurrence of other vowels in following syllables.

1. The character অ, or the inherent vowel of an ekar consonant character, is realised as (o) when it is followed by one of the characters, or corresponding signs, for i, ii, u or uu.

e.g. অতি                      ধনী                      অতুল                      সবুজ  
eti(oti)    dhənii(dhoni)    ətulə(otul)<sup>1</sup>    səbuje(əbuje)

When the character অ represents the negative prefix, however, the usual realisation of it as (o) is not affected by the occurrence of one of these vowels in the following syllable; e.g.

অধীর, ədhiire(ədhir), অতুল, ətulə(ətul)<sup>2</sup>.

iii. The character এ, or the corresponding sign, in initial position is often realised as (æ) unless it is followed by a

1. A proper name.

2. 'incomparable'.



character with the vowels i , ii , u or uu ; e.g.

বেলা	নেকরা	এমন	এমনি
bela(bwla)	nekerā(næk'ra)	emēn(emon)	emoni(em'ni)
এক	একটা	একটী	একটু
eka(æk)	eketa(æk'ta)	eketi(ek'ti)	eketu(ek'tu)

The verbal form দেখে is realised in two ways. When it represents the form described grammatically as 'simple present, third person' it is realised as (dekhe). When it represents the form described as 'past participle', it is realised as (dekhe).

Reading examples, illustrating the notes given above.<sup>1</sup>

1. i. Final ekar characters realised with zero-vowel

তিন দুখ দূর নীল চোখ মেঘ শূণাল মতালেব

- ii. Final ekar characters realised with (o)

জুত তিত গুট মৃগ ছোট দৃঢ় মৌন ষোল ধৌত মৃত

2. Medial ekar characters realised as described in note a.i.

চাকর সাহস পাথর পাগল কৌশল দেবর  
তোমরা টুকা কামরা চুপড়ি মুচকি তালপাত গগনভেনা

3. Verbal forms, realised as described in note a.ii.

লেখ লেখ থাক থাক জান্ জান জিতব জিতবো  
শুনত শুনতো জাগল জাগলো ভিজত তুলব শুনল

4. ekar characters realised as described in note b.i.

বই কই খই নদী যদি যতি বলি বসি সলিল  
চলিত সহিত জমিদার অভিধান গলিত পলিত  
পলু পটু মধুর মরুৎ বলুক ফতুর বহুৎ

1. For transcription of examples, see p.227.



Realisation of the modified character য়, 'əntəsthə ýə'.<sup>1</sup>

The character য়, referred to as 'əntəsthə ýə(əntostho ɔ) is a modified form of the əntəsthə character য, yə. This modified character has been introduced into the Bengali script as a graphic device for representing sounds which cannot be represented by the əntəsthə characters য and ব, since in modern Bengali əntəsthə yə is realised by the same sound as vergiiýə jə and əntəsthə və is realised by the same sound as vergiiýə bə.<sup>2</sup>

The contexts in which this character occurs, and the realisation of it in reading, are illustrated in the following notes.

a. As the character য় is realised in modern Bengali as (jə), a means of representing the Bengali equivalent of the semi-vowel yə which occurs in Sanskrit loanwords becomes necessary. Sanskrit loanwords which are written in the Devanagari script with the character य, ye, are written in Bengali with əntəsthə ýə, and this character is realised in various ways, illustrated in the examples given below<sup>3</sup>:

1. য় realised as an intersyllabic vocalic glide, as in

মায়িক	মায়ুর	নিয়ম	দায়ক
mayíkə(mayik)	mayúre(mayur)	niyəmə(niyom)	dayəke(dayok)

দয়া	মায়়া	আয়োজন
dəýa(doya)	mayə(maya)	ayojənə(ayojon)

- 
1. See above, under 1.ii. əntəsthə characters. 2. For a historical discussion of this character, see S.K.Chatterji, The Origin and Development of the Bengali Language, pub. University of Calcutta.
  3. A detailed phonetic analysis is outside the scope of this work, and therefore this vocalic glide, the quality of which may vary according to the vowels preceding or following it, is represented in the phonetic transcription by (y) in the examples given in notes a., b. and c.

ii. য realised finally as a vocalic glide of an e-like quality,

as in

জয়

joye(joy)

সময়

sameye(somoy)

বিষয়

visaye(bijoy)

পরিচয়

pericaye(poricoy)

দায়

daye(day)

কায়

kaye(kay)

রায়

raye(ray)

or realised as an intervocalic glide followed by the inherent vowel realised as (o), as in

দেয়

deye(deyo)<sup>1</sup>

নেয়

neye(neyo)<sup>1</sup>

পেয়

peye(peyo)

ধেয়

dheye(dheyo)

অজেয়

ajeaye(ajeyo)

কমনীয়

kamoniiye(komoniyo)

বর্ণীয়

vergiiye(borgiyo)<sup>2</sup>

b. antestha ye is written to represent the Bengali equivalent of certain diphthongs in loanwords from other modern languages, and is used in combination with other characters to represent the Bengali equivalent of initial characters combined with ye<sup>3</sup> in such loanwords:-

1. The realisation in modern Bengali of the vowel character ঐ , ay , is (oi). Loanwords from other languages in which the Devanagari equivalent of this diphthong occurs, or in which the character representing ye in these languages is realised with the preceding vowel as a diphthong, are written in Bengali with antestha ye, as illustrated in the examples given below.

1. Compare this realisation with the words written in the same way in note c.ii. below.

2. The character ञ represents -rg-. See Ch.3,3.Class 3.111.a.

3. See Sanskrit,Ch.3, Conjunct Characters, Class 3.1.



য় , ekar, realised medially as a front vocalic glide with an e-like quality, as in

পয়সা	পয়দা	কায়দা	জায়গা
payśa(payśa)	payda(poyda)	kayda(kayda)	jayga(jayga)
বয়স	পায়স		
vayśa(boyś)	payśa(payś)		

য় , ekar, realised medially as an intersyllabic vocalic glide, as in

কয়েদ	আয়েস	বয়েৎ
koyeda(koyed)	ayesa(ayeś)	boyeta(boyet)

ii. antasthe ya is written also in some English loanwords as a means of representing the Bengali pronunciation of the diphthongs in such words as 'chair', চেয়ার (ceyar), and 'care' কেয়ার (keyar).

iii. When the character য , ye , is combined with an initial consonant character in a conjunct character<sup>1</sup>, it is realised as zero. Some loanwords used in modern Bengali are written in Hindi, in the Devanagari script, with initial conjunct characters of Class 3.1., that is, combined with the character representing ye . Such words, as loanwords in Bengali, are written in Bengali script with an initial ekar character followed by antasthe ya, as in these words: পেয়ালা peyala(peyala), পেয়ার peyara(peyar).

c. antasthe ya is written in some words in order to avoid writing a vowel character in a medial or final position. This use of antasthe ya occurs in words and in grammatical forms.

1. See Sanskrit, Ch.3,3.Class 3.1., and below, Ch.3,3.Class 3.1.



1. য় in words, realised as an intersyllabic vocalic glide followed by the inherent vowel or the vowel represented by the vowel sign, as in

মেয়ে	কয়েক	ফতুয়া
meýe(meye)	koyekə(koyek)	phetuýa(photuya)
শিয়র	শিয়া	পোয়াল
ʃiýərə(ʃiyor)	ʃiýa(ʃiya)	poýalə(poyal)

11. য় in grammatical forms, in which it is written medially with a vowel sign representing the vowel of a particle, when a particle consisting of a vowel only is added to a word ending in a vowel. The following examples illustrate this use of য় :

Verbal forms in which final য় , akar or ekar, is realised as an intersyllabic vocalic glide after the vowel i and after the inherent vowel, which in this context is realised as (o); as in these forms which are described grammatically as 'past participles', occurring in the literary language -

বলিয়া	দেখিয়া	শুইয়া	গিয়া
baliýa(boliya)	dekhiýa(dekhiya)	ʃuiýa(ʃuiya)	giýa(giya)

and in these colloquial forms, described in the same way -

গিয়ে	দিয়ে	হয়ে	শুয়ে	পেয়ে
giýe(giye)	diýe(diye)	heýe(hoye)	ʃuýe(ʃuye)	peýe(peye)

Verbal forms in which final য় is realised as a vocalic glide with an e-like quality, as in these forms which are described grammatically as 'present tense, third person' -

নয়	রয়	পায়	জানায়	বেরায়
noýe(noy)	reýe(roy)	paýe(pay)	janaýe(janay)	beroýe(beroy)

The verbal forms দেয় and নেয় are realised respectively as (day) and (nay).<sup>1</sup>

Noun forms in which the 'genitive' suffix এর, era(er) is added to nouns ending in a vowel, and noun and pronoun forms in which the 'locative' suffix এ, e(e) is written as entestha ye after a final vowel; entestha ye realised as a vocalic glide -

মায়ের	ঝিয়ার	বউয়ের	দুইয়ের
mayera(mayer)	jhiyera(jhiyer)	bouyera(bouyer)	duiyera(duiyer)
পায়	থানায়	আমায়	তোমায়
paye(pay)	thanaye(thanay)	amayae(amay)	tomaye(tomay)

- d. As the entestha character ব, ve, is realised as (bo) in modern Bengali, that is, in the same way as the vergliye character ব, be, a graphic method of representing word structure involving the semivowel ve in loanwords becomes necessary. This semivowel is represented in Bengali by writing the vowel character ও, o, followed by entestha ye. This combination of characters is used in the following examples of loanwords, in which য় is realised as a back vocalic glide, transcribed here phonetically as (-v)

হাওয়া	পোয়া	ডাকওয়ালা	দেওয়ালি
haoya(hoova)	poya(poova)	ḍakaoṛala(ḍakovalala)	deoṛali(deovalali)

This method of representing a back vocalic glide is used also in verbal forms in which a suffix beginning with (a) is added to a base consisting of one character, as in

হওয়া	যাওয়ান	পাওয়া
haoya(hoova)	yaoṛane(jaovano)	paoya(paova)

1. Compare the realisation of these forms with that of the two words written in the same way, given above in a.ii.



### 3. Modifiers.

Three modifiers are used in writing Bengali. These are marks added to characters to represent some modification of the syllable it represents. The first two modifiers represent nasalisation, and the third represents aspiration. These modifiers may be compared with the corresponding modifiers of the Devanagari script<sup>1</sup>.

1. চন্দ্র-বিন্দু, candra-bindu, and অনুস্বার, anusvara.

#### a. candra-bindu<sup>2</sup>

When the mark <sup>◌̣</sup> is written above a character, the vowel of the syllable which the character represents is realised with nasalisation. This mark corresponds in form, though not in the way in which it is realised, with the mark called *anunasika* in Sanskrit.

candra-bindu added to vowel characters:

অ	আ	ই	ঈ	উ	ঊ	এ	ঐ	ও	ঔ
ā	ā	ī	īi	ū	ūu	ē	ēy	ō	ōv

candra-bindu added to the consonant character ক with vowel signs:

ক	কা	কি	কী	কু	কূ	কে	কৈ	কো	কৌ
kā	kā	kī	kīi	kū	kūu	kē	kēy	kō	kōv

Characters written with candra-bindu are referred to in spelling thus: (for a-e candra-bindu), (ka-e candra-bindu hroṣṣo ikar).

Reading examples<sup>3</sup>

এর ওর আঁক হাঁ চিঁ চোঁ টুঁ তাঁ ধাঁ রোঁ তুঁই  
 যুঁই তুঁষ ঠাঁই চাঁচ ছেঁক ভাঁড় ঘোঁট কুঁদল বেঁধে  
 জাঁকা দাঁড়ি খোঁপা ধুঁধুল পঁচিশ হাঁকাড়ি

1. See Sanskrit, Ch.2,3.1. and 11.

2. (candra-bindu).

3. For transcription, see page 228.  
 realised with zero-vowel.

Final akar consonant characters



b. ənusvare<sup>1</sup>

The term ənusvare is used in Bengali to refer to the mark ং , realised as (ŋ). It may occur finally, or medially, written as an alternative to the həsəntə form of the character ঙ , ণে . These examples illustrate the writing of the ənusvar:

এবং	সিং	আংটি	ইংরাজ	সাং
ebəŋ(əboŋ)	siŋ(ʃiŋ)	aŋti(aŋti)	iŋraʃə(iŋraj)	saŋ(ʃaŋ)

Some words may be written either with the ənusvar or with ঙ্গ :

রং	রঙ	বাংলা	বাঙলা
rəŋ(rəŋ) or rəŋ(rəŋ)		baŋla(baŋla) or baŋla(baŋla)	

The ənusvar occurs in many Sanskrit loanwords preceding a character of the əntəsthə or the uṣṣmə group, and especially in words which have the Sanskrit prefix written in Devanagari as सम् , sam . The realisation of the ənusvar in Bengali, as -ŋ , may be compared with the various ways of realising the ənusvar of the Devanagari script in the same Sanskrit loanwords in other parts of India.<sup>2</sup>

Examples: সংযোগ	səmyogə(ʃəŋjog)	সংরাগ	səmrage(ʃəŋrag)
সংবাদ	səmvade(ʃəŋbad)	অংস	aŋʃə(əŋʃo)
সংসার	səmsare(ʃəŋʃar)	সিংহ	siŋhə(ʃiŋho)

Reading examples<sup>3</sup>

নং	টং	গাং	অংশ	দংশন	শংসা	ঠংঠং	বাংশ
সংঘাত	সংবিৎ	পাংশু	সুতরাং	অবতংস	নংশুক		
সংযমন	বংশধর	সংশোধন	সাংঘাতিক	কংসহা			

1. (onuffor). In the transcription of examples, in roman notation, the ənusvar is transcribed as ŋ in order to distinguish it from the character ঙ্গ , transcribed as ŋ . 2. Cf. Sanskrit, Ch. 2, 3.1.c.  
3. For transcription of examples, see p. 228.

11. বিসর্গ, visarga.<sup>1</sup>

The sign ঃ written after a character represents aspiration following the vowel of the syllable with which the character is realised. It occurs mainly in Sanskrit loanwords, and is written in a few Bengali exclamations to express emphasis. When the visarga is written with a final character, it is realised as aspiration after the final syllable. When it occurs medially, it is realised as the doubling of the following character, as in দুঃখ, dukkha(dukkho).

Examples:

বাঃ	উঃ	পুনঃ	নিঃশেষ	অতঃপর
bah(bah)	uh(uh)	puneh(punch)	nihṣeṣe(niṣṣeṣ)	etehpere(otoppor)

Reading examples<sup>2</sup>

অরুঃ	সরুঃ	পুনঃ	সহঃ	নিঃসুখ	অতঃপর
শতায়ুঃ	নভঃসদ	অচেতাঃ	দুঃসময়	বাঃসদন	
নিঃকারণ	হবিঃশেষ	বনৌকাঃ	নিঃকাসন	দুঃসহ	

4. The Complete Syllabary.

The complete syllabary, arranged in the traditional order, is given on the following page. The Sanskrit vowel characters ঁ , ড and ণ are not included in the syllabary. This table, with the order of characters with vowel signs given above under Vowel Signs<sup>3</sup>, shows the order in which the characters are placed as the initial characters of words in dictionaries. Characters with the anusvar precede the same characters with the cendre-bindu, and both precede characters without the anusvar or cendre-bindu but followed by another consonant character.

1. (bifargo). Cf. Sanskrit, Ch.2,3.11.

2. For transcription, see p.228.

3. See above, under 2.11.



অ	আ	ই	ঈ	উ	ঊ
এ	ঐ	ও	ঔ		
ঋ	অং	অঃ			
ক	খ	গ	ঘ	ঙ	
চ	ছ	জ	ঝ	ঞ	
ট	ঠ	ড	ঢ	ণ	
ত	থ	দ	ধ	ম	
প	ফ	ব	ভ	ম	
য	র	ল	ব		
শ	ষ	স	হ		

### 5. Numerals

The Bengali numerals are written thus:

১	২	৩	৪	৫	৬	৭	৮	৯	১০
1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	8	10

### 6. Punctuation

In Bengali prose writing the end of a sentence is marked by an upright stroke of the same height as the upright stroke of a character. This mark is referred to as দাঁড়ি, dāṛi. Other punctuation marks are used as in English. This system is illustrated in the prose passage at the end of this section<sup>1</sup>. The system of punctuation used in Bengali verse is the same as that used in Sanskrit<sup>2</sup>, but in much modern verse the prose system is used.

1. See end of Ch.3. 2. See Sanskrit, Ch.2,3,11. Reading examples.



## CHAPTER 3

### CONJUNCT CHARACTERS

Consonant characters may be combined to represent two or more consonants which are to be realised consecutively, without an intervening vowel. Characters formed in this way are referred to in Bengali as যুক্তাক্ষর, yuktakṣeraḥ.

#### 1. Construction of Conjunct Characters.

Bengali conjunct characters are constructed to some extent by the same methods as the Devanagari conjunct characters, described in the Sanskrit section.<sup>2</sup> These methods vary according to the form of the characters to be combined.

- i. The character which is realised as the second consonant may be subscribed to the first character; e.g.

ক	ন্ত	প্ত	ক্ষ
kke	nte	pte	hme

- ii. The characters to be joined may be written consecutively, without the usual intervening space; e.g.

জ্ঞ	চ্ছ	দগ	ধ্ব
ggha	cche	dge	dhve

- iii. If the first character has a stroke which can be used as part of the second character, the characters may be joined as in these examples:

দ	ব	ন	জ
dde	bde	nde	bje

---

1. (yuktakkhor).      2. See Sanskrit, Ch.3.1.

- iv. The form of either the first or the second character may be modified in order to make possible the writing of the two characters as one conjunct character. These modifications vary according to the form of the characters to be joined; e.g.

ত	থ	ভ	ঠ	ষ্ঠ	স্ত
tte	tthe	kte	ṛthe	ṣthe	ste

- v. The characters ত , য , and র , have special forms which are used when they are combined with other characters; e.g.

ৎক	ৎপ	ক্য	ত্য	র্ক	ক্র
tkē <sup>1</sup>	tpē	kya	tye	rke	kra

- vi. If any characters cannot be combined by any of these methods, the realisation of them without an intervening vowel is indicated by writing the first character with the *hōsente*.

The modified forms of some of the characters, written as the second part of a conjunct character, are referred to as the syllable which the full character represents and the particle ফলা , *phela* (*phola*); e.g. যফলা , *ye-phela*(*jophola*). বফলা , *va-phela*(*bophola*). The modified forms of the characters ন , ঘ , র , ল , used in forming conjunct characters, are also referred to in this way.<sup>2</sup>

## 2. Contexts and Realisation of Conjunct Characters.

Conjunct characters in Bengali occur in the following contexts:

1. In Bengali words, that is, words not borrowed from Sanskrit or from modern languages; e.g.

বড়	পটন	মুণ্ড
boḍḍo(boḍḍo)	petten(potton)	munḍo(munḍo)

1. See above, Ch.2,1.1. *kheṇḍe te*. 2. For spelling terms used in referring to conjunct characters, see end of this chapter.



- ii. In Sanskrit loanwords, either words used commonly in Bengali, or words used in the literary language only; e.g.

পন্থা	শব্দ	রাষ্ট্র
pantha(pontha)	śabda(śabdo)	raṣṭra(raṣṭro)

- In the classes of conjunct characters given below, under 3., conjunct characters are included which are used only in writing Sanskrit. Some of these characters do not occur in Bengali texts, though words including them are found in Bengali dictionaries.
- iii. In loanwords from other languages; e.g.

খঞ্জর	মাষ্টার	চর্কি
khəṇjərə(khanjor)	maṣṭarə(maṣṭar)	caṛbbi(corbbi)

Conjunct characters are realised as syllables consisting of two or more consonants followed by a vowel. The realisation of əkar conjunct characters in various positions follows in general the rules already given for the realisation of əkar consonant characters. In describing the realisation of individual characters, the inherent vowel is phonetically transcribed as (ɔ), as in the transcription of the characters of the syllabary.

The realisation in modern Bengali of əkar consonant characters with zero-vowel, or with an ə-glide, in certain positions in words gives rise to a problem of spelling. This realisation of such characters in words of three or more characters, and in verbal bases with suffixes added, has been illustrated above<sup>1</sup>. The realisation of əkar consonant characters with zero-vowel in such contexts often results in the speaking of two consecutive consonants in a way similar to the realisation of a conjunct character. Examples of Bengali words in

1. See above, Ch.2.2.ii.



which the realisation of separate consonant characters is similar to that of conjunct characters are given below with the various classes.

### 3. Classes of Conjunct Characters in Bengali.

The Bengali conjunct characters are arranged in this chapter in the same four classes as the Devanagari characters given in the Sanskrit section . All the characters given in the Sanskrit section have equivalents in the Bengali script, and all the examples given in that section can be written in Bengali script. The reading examples given with each class of conjunct characters include some learned loanwords which may be found in literary texts.

#### Class 1. Two similar characters joined.<sup>1</sup>

These characters represent syllables consisting of a 'doubled' consonant followed by a vowel.

ক	ক্কা	গ	গ্গ	ঘ	ঘ্ঘ	চ	চ্চ	জ	জ্জ	ঝ	ঝ্ঝ	--
-kko	-kkha	-ggo	-gghe	--	--	-cco	-cche	-jje	-jje	-jje	-jjhe	--
ট	ট্ট	ড	ড্ড	ন	নন্	ত	ত্ত	দ	দ্দ	ন	নন্	নন্
-tto	-tthe	-ddo	-dde	-no	-no	-tto	-tthe	-ddo	-dde	-no	-no	-no
প	প্প	ব	ব্ভ	ম	মন্	শ	শ্শ	স	স্স	--	--	--
-ppo	-ppe	-bbo	-bbe	-mo	-mo	-sho	-shhe	-so	-sse	--	--	--
য	য়	ল	ল্ল	শ	শ্শ	স	স্স	--	--	--	--	--
-yjo	--	-llo	--	-sho	-shhe	-so	-sse	--	--	--	--	--

The character ন is realised as (nno). The character য় is realised as (jjo), or when it is akar, as (jjm). The character স্স , which occurs only in loanwords, is realised as (sso).

1. Compare Sanskrit, Ch.3.3. Class 1.

When a suffix with an initial consonant character is added to a verbal base with a final akar consonant character, the realisation of the consecutive characters in the verbal form is similar to the realisation of conjunct characters of this class. Examples:

করত , karate(kotto), পারলাম , parelame(pallam).<sup>1</sup>

Reading examples<sup>2</sup>

পক্ষ কক্ষট পঙ্গড় কচ্চর ইচ্ছা লজ্জা কুঙ্কাটিকা  
গাড়া উড়ীন ষমবত উত্তর উত্থান চৌদ্দ শুদ্ধ কামা  
ছন্নর ছাবিশ উন্মোদ শয্যা ফুল্ল মনশ্শান্তি হিস্সা  
বিষম সাহায্য সন্দার তিব্বৎ পরিচ্ছন্ন বৃদ্ধ চিত্ত

### Class 2. Two vargiya characters joined.<sup>3</sup>

These characters occur mainly in Sanskrit loanwords. The series of Devanagari characters of this class, given in the Sanskrit section, includes many characters which occur in the joining of words in compounds, in phrases and in sentences in a Sanskrit text. The characters occurring in a Sanskrit text printed in Bengali script can be recognised with a knowledge of Sanskrit; but it is beyond the scope of this work to include all the possible combinations of characters in this class. The characters given below may occur in a Bengali literary text.

1.	ক্ত	ৎক	ৎখ	গ্দ	দগ	গ্ধ	দধ
	-kte	-tke	-tkhe	-gde	-dge	-gdhe	-dghe
11.	ৎপ	ৎফ	প্ত	দ্ব	ব্ধ	দ্ব	ব্ধ
	-tpe	-tphe	-pte	-dhe	-bde	-dbhe	-bdhe

1. These forms are sometimes written, for instance, in dialogue, with conjunct characters. Cf. notes in Ch.2,1.111.  
2. For transcription, see p.228. 3. Cf. Sanskrit, Ch.3,3.Cl.2.1.-iv.



11.a.	ক	খ	গ	ঘ	ঞ	জ	ঝ
	-ṅka	-ṅkha	-ṅga	-ṅgha	-ṅca	-ṅcha	-ṅja
	ট	ঠ	ড	ঢ	ন্ত	ন্ত	ন্ত
	-ṅṭa	-ṅṭha	-ṅḍa	-ṅḍha	-ṅṭa	-ṅṭha	-ṅḍa
	ম্প	ম্ফ	ম্ভ	ম্ভ	Special ukar form		ন্ত
	-mpe	-mphe	-mbe	-mbhe			ntu

The nasal consonant of the ke-verge, in the first group above, may be represented alternatively by the *onusvar*<sup>1</sup>. The character ঞ, joined with a character of the ce-verge, is realised as (n-). The character ণ, joined with a character of the te-verge, is realised as (ṅ-).

b.	জ্জ	জ্জ	ত্ন্ত	দ্ন্ত
	-cpe	jpa	-tna	-dna

The character জ্জ occurs only in the Sanskrit loanword যাজ্জ, *yacpa*, realised as (jaona) or as (jacinga).

The character জ্জ is realised initially as (go); and medially as (go), with nasalisation of the following vowel, as in

জ্ঞান *jṇana(gṇen)*, and আজ্জা, *aṅja(aggṇa)*. This character is not calligraphically a conjunct character, and it is often included in the *akṣeramaḥ* after the consonant characters<sup>2</sup>.

11i.	ক্	গ্	ঘ্	জ্	দ্	প্
	-kma	-gma	-ghma	-tma	-dma	-pma

The character ক্, *tma*, is realised as (tta), often with nasalisation of the following vowel, as in আত্মা, *atma(atta)*.

The character দ্, *dma*, is realised as (dda), with nasalisation

1. See above, Ch.2.3.1.b. 2. Words beginning with this character are placed in dictionaries after words beginning with জ্জ.



of the following vowel, except in words in common use, such as  
পদ্ম , pədmə(pəddō, pəddo).

iv.

ঙ

-ŋmə

ঞ

-ŋmə

ণ

-nmə

ড

-mne

The following examples illustrate the realisation of consecutive consonant characters, when the first is əkar, in a way similar to the realisation of conjunct characters of this class:

Verbal forms

কাঁদব

kādəbə(kāḍ'bo)

কাঁপত

kāpəte(kāp'to)

শুনতাম

ʃunətame(ʃun'tam)

Other words

পানমরিচ

panəmericə(pan'moric)

পাতকুয়া

patəkuýa(pat'kuya)

হাতছানি

hatəchani(hat'chani)

Reading examples<sup>1</sup>

1. শক্তি বাগদান উদ্গমন উদ্ঘাত অদ্ভুত শব্দ উৎপথ দক্ষ  
গুপ্ত উৎকর উৎফুল্ল উৎপন্ন চমৎকার উৎখাত ষট্কোণ
- ii. অলঙ্কার শঙ্খ সজ্জত সজ্জটন অঞ্চল লাঞ্ছনা অঞ্জলি  
বাক্সাট কন্টকী কণ্ঠা পাণ্ডা চুড়িত শান্তি পত্নী নিন্দা  
অক্ষ সম্পদ লক্ষ অম্বর সম্ভব জ্ঞান জিজ্ঞাসা পত্নী পণ্ডিত
- iii শম্মা সংলগ্ন আত্মা দ্বা বাগ্মী
- iv. উন্মাদ জন্ম নিম্নোক্ত বাধ্যয় ষম্মাস

Class 3. Characters joined with əntəsthe characters.

1. Characters joined with following য .2

All the characters of the Bengali syllabary occur in this class except ঙ , ŋə and ঞ , ɲə . These conjunct characters are formed by adding the stroke ʃ , referred to as yəphəla(jəphəla) to another character, thus: ক্য , kyə , ত্য , tyə , প্য , pyə , শ্য , ʃyə .

1. For transcription, see p.228. 2. Cf. Sanskrit, Ch.3,3.Class 3.i.

Conjunct characters may be formed by combining three characters; e.g.

ক্ৰ , ktyə, ক্ত্য , ntyə, ক্কা , ndhyə, ক্কা , tmyə.

Characters written with yephəla are realised in various ways; and the occurrence of a character combined with yephəla in certain contexts affects the quality of some of the vowels.

a. Realisation of characters with yephəla.

When an initial character is written with yephəla it is realised as as zero-yephəla and the vowel of the syllable, e.g.

ন্যূন	ধ্যেয়	জ্যোতিষ
nyuune(nun)	dhyeyə(dheyo)	jyotiṣə(jotis)

When a medial or a final character is written with yephəla, the character is realised as the doubling of the consonant represented by the character with which yephəla is written<sup>1</sup>; e.g.

বাক্য	রাজ্য	পুণ্য
vakkyə(bakko)	rajyə(rajjo)	purṇyə(punno)

b. Realisation of vowels affected by yephəla.

An əkar character preceding a character with yephəla is realised with the inherent vowel as (o), e.g.

অন্য	সভ্য	কল্য	তালব্য
ənyə(onno)	səbhyə(jobbho)	kelyə(kollo) <sup>2</sup>	taləvyə(talobbo)

If an initial character with yephəla is əkar, the vowel is realised as (æ), unless the əkar character is followed by an ikar or an iikar character, when it is realised as (e)<sup>3</sup>; e.g.

ব্যথা	ব্যথী	ব্যঞ্জন	ব্যতীত
vyətha(bætha)	vyəthii(bethi)	vyəṇjəṇə(bəṇjon)	vyətiite(betito)

1. For examples of medial characters, see below, under note b.

2. Cf. the verbal form করল , kərelə(kollo), Ch.2,1.iii.note b.

3. Cf. note on realisation of vowel characters and signs, Ch.2,2.ii.b.



If a character with yephala is akar, the vowel is realised as (a),

e.g. ন্যায়      ধ্যান      ব্যাখ্যান      কন্যা  
 naya(nay)<sup>1</sup>    dhyana(dhan)    vyakhya(baakkhan)    kenya(konnae)

In the word উদ্যোগ, udyoga, a Sanskrit loanword in which the conjunct character arises from the joining of the prefix উৎ, ut-, with the word যোগ, yoga, the medial character is realised as (djo), the word being realised as (udjog)<sup>2</sup>. This realisation may be contrasted with the realisation of the character with yephala in বিদ্যা, vidya(bidda). Note also সহ্য, sahya(sajjho).

Reading examples<sup>3</sup>

বাক্য    খ্যাত    যোগ্যতা    চ্যবন    চ্যুত    জ্যোতি    জ্যেষ্ঠা    ট্যাঁ  
 ঠ্যাং    টাঁড়া    পুণ্য    যত্যাচার    অতুণ্ডম    অত্যয়    সত্য  
 ভৃত্যের    মিথ্যা    গদ্য    দুমনি    অবাধ্য    ধ্যান    ধ্যেয়    ন্যায়  
 ন্যূন    উপন্যাস    প্যান    রৌপ্য    অভ্যাস    ম্যাও    কল্যান    তালব্য  
 ব্যঞ্জন    শ্যাম    ষ্ণুষ্য    স্যদ    সহ্য    উদ্যান    স্ক্যা    সঞ্চেয়

#### 11. Characters with following ব .<sup>4</sup>

This class of conjunct characters consists of characters combined with antestha ve, corresponding with the Devanagari characters joined with the antestha character व, ve. These conjunct characters occur only in Sanskrit loanwords. When व, or its modified form, occurs as the second part of a conjunct character, it is referred to as yephala(bophala). It is written with some characters in the full form, joined to the preceding character by the matra, as in धव, dhve, हव, hve; or in the modified form, added to the foot of a

1. Cf. the verbal form realised as (nay) in the note on antestha ya on p.203.      2. Also realised as (uddog).  
 3. For transcription, see p.229.      4. Cf. Sanskrit, Ch.3,3.Class 3.ii.



character, as in ক , kve , ত , tve , শ , sve . The form of the character ব , rve , is discussed later, under iii.a.

The following are examples of conjunct characters formed by combining three characters: ত্ত , ttve , দ্ধ , ddhve , ক্ত , ktve .

In the conjunct characters of this class, antasthe ve is regarded as a separate character from vergiiye be, although in the syllabary the two characters are the same. Words beginning with an initial conjunct character of this class are placed in dictionaries after words beginning with conjunct characters formed by combining a consonant character with a following র .

When vephela is written with an initial character, it is realised as zero; e.g.

স্বামী	জাল	ত্বক্ত	দ্বাদশ
svamii(jami)	jvale(jal)	tvakte(tokto)	dvade[ə(dado)]

When vephela is written with a medial or a final character, it is realised as the first part of the conjunct character doubled, with zero-realisation of vephela, as in the following examples:

অন্বহ	ঈশ্বর	বিশ্ব	কণ্ণ
onvæh(onnoho)	iifveræ(iifor)	vi[ve(bi]fo)	kəṇvæ(konno)

The character হ্বে , hve , is realised as a v-glide followed by a bilabial aspirate, as in বিশ্বল , bihvæl(bivvhol).

In Sanskrit words, used as learned loanwords in literary Bengali, a prefix ending in a hesente consonant character may be added to a word with initial antasthe ve. In the conjunct character which results, and in the conjunct characters which arise from the joining

of two words in a compound, vephala is realised as (b-); e.g.

উদ্বিগ্ন

সদ্যবহার

ঋগ্বেদ

udvigne(udbigno) sadvyevahare(jadbabohar) rgveda(rigbed)

The words উদ্বান , udvane(uddan), and বিদ্বান , vidvane(bidden) are exceptions to this general rule.

The realisation of vephala, illustrated by the above examples, results in a similarity of realisation of two or more words which are the same in the spoken language and distinguished only in writing; e.g. ধনী , dheni, and ধ্বনি , dhveni, realised as (dheni),<sup>1</sup>

শিকার , jikara, and স্বীকার , sviikara, realised as (jikar),<sup>2</sup>

শর , jara, সর , sara, and স্বর , svara , realised as (jor).<sup>3</sup>

Reading examples<sup>4</sup>

কুচিং পক উচ্ছাদ জ্বাল ফরা তত্ত্ব ধ্বংস বিল্ব  
দৈশ্বর স্বচ্ছ অব্বেষণ স্বদেশ সরস্বতী শ্বাপ জিহ্বা

iii. Characters joined with preceding র্ or with following র .

a. র্ preceding another character.<sup>5</sup>

Conjunct characters of this class are formed by writing a stroke referred to as রেফ , rephe (reph), above the character before which র্ is to be realised.

This stroke is placed at the right hand side of any other super-scribed stroke, and is the last stroke of the character to be written.

e.g. ক ট ট ত দ কী কে কৌ  
-rke -rce -rte -rte -rpe -rkii -rke -rkeṅ

The characters গ , চ , জ , ত , দ , ধ , ম , য and ব

1. 'master' and 'sound'.

2. 'hunting' and 'agreement'.

3. 'arrow', 'cream' and 'voice'.

4. For transcription, see p.229.

5. Cf. Sanskrit, Ch.3,3.Cl.3.iii.a.



are often written in their doubled form with rephel<sup>1</sup>; e.g.

ত্ৰ , rttē, জ্জ , rgge, দ্ধ , rmmē, ঝ্ঝ , rrvē

In some words, including verbal forms, the realisation of ekar consonant characters with zero-vowel in certain positions leads to the realisation of র্ before another consonant character in a way similar to the realisation of rephe, as in these examples:-

Verbal forms: পারত , pareto(par'to, patto), মরল , marela(mollo)

Other words: দরবার , derabara(dor'bar), সরকার , sarekara(ṣar'kar)

Reading examples<sup>2</sup>

তর্ক মুখ বর্গীয় দীর্ঘ বার্চি মুচ্ছিন সর্জ্জু বর্ণ কর্তব্য  
পদার্থ কর্দট অর্দ্ধ দুর্নাম সর্প সমর্পণ ধর্ম মর্যাদা দুর্লভ  
বহির্ভূত সর্ক মর্শন মর্ষণ গর্হণ আর্ষ্য বিসর্গ সর্দার

b. র following another character.<sup>3</sup>

Conjunct characters of this class are formed by subscribing the stroke referred to as rephela(rephola) to a consonant character. The characters with rephela which occur in Bengali, mostly in Sanskrit loanwords, are illustrated by the reading examples given below.

The following characters illustrate the calligraphy of characters with rephela, with some special forms; and some conjunct characters formed by joining three characters:

ক্ৰ	গ্র	জ্জ	ত্ৰ	দ্র	প্র	ভ্র	শ্র	হ্র
kre	gre	jre	tre	dre	pre	bhre	ṣre	hre
দ্রু	ধ্রু	ফ্রু	ত্ৰু	ঞ্রু	ঞ্দ্রু	ঞ্ক্রু	ঞ্ধ্রু	
dru	dhruu	ṣru	tru	-ṅgre	-ndre	-ktre	-ndhre	

1. The rules of orthography of Calcutta University, given in the Bengali dictionary চলচ্চিত্র, p.597, recommend that this practice be discontinued.
2. For transcription, see p.230.
3. Cf. Sanskrit, Ch.3,3. Cl.3.iii.a.



Reading examples<sup>1</sup>

কুদ্ধ গ্রাম ঘ্নেয় বজ্র পুত্র দ্রব্য প্রণাম প্রিয়  
ভ্রমর ব্যগ্র আশ্রয় সম্রাট দ্রুত দ্রু বধ ব্রত শ্রী  
হিত অশ্রু প্রার্থনা আন্ধ উচ্চয় সন্ধান্ত পত্ন সন্তহ

iv. Characters with preceding ল্ or with following ল .<sup>2</sup>

a. ল্ preceding another character.

Characters joined with preceding ল্ are formed by writing the second character either immediately after, or below, ল , thus:-

ক , lke , ল্ল , lge , ল্প , lpe , ল্ম , lme . Only a few of the Bengali characters occur with preceding ল , and these are illustrated below in the reading examples.

b. ল following another character.

These characters are formed by writing ল at the foot of the character after which it is to be realised, thus -

ক্ল , kle , গ্ল , gle , প্ল , ple , ম্ল , mle , ফ্ল , fle . The character হ্ is not combined with ল in a conjunct character, but the two characters are written consecutively, thus হ্ল . When ল , or a modified form of it, is added to another character as the second part of a conjunct character, it is referred to as lephela(lephela). Only a few of these characters occur, mostly in Sanskrit loanwords. Those which occur are illustrated below in the reading examples.

The realisation of consecutive consonant characters, when the first is ekar and in certain positions, in a way similar to the realisation of conjunct characters of this class is illustrated in these

1. For transcription, see p.230.

2. Cf. Sanskrit, Ch.3,3.Cl.3.iv.a. and b.

words: বিলকুল , bilekulə(bil'kul), মতলব , metələbə(mət'lob).

Reading examples<sup>1</sup>

উল্কা বহ্নিত ফাল্গুন উল্টা গল্প গুল্ম প্রগল্ভ গুল্ম উল্ল  
ক্লান্ত শ্লোপন প্লাবন তল্লক শ্লান শ্লোক অশ্লীল হ্লাদ

Class 4. vergiiṣe characters joined with preceding or following  
uṣṣma characters.

i. Characters combined with preceding শ্ , ষ্ or স্

a. শ্ , ষ্ or স্ preceding another character.<sup>2</sup>

Characters which occur with preceding শ্ :-

শ্চ	শ্ছ	শ্ণ	শ্ম
-ʃcə	-ʃche	-ʃnə	ʃmə

Characters which occur with preceding ষ্ :-

ষ্ক	ষ্ট	ষ্ঠ	ষ্ণ	ষ্প	ষ্ফ	ষ্ম
-ʃkə	-ʃtə	-ʃthə	-ʃnə	-ʃpə	-ʃphe	-ʃmə

Words with cursive forms:

বৃষ্ণ নষ্ট জ্যেষ্ঠ পুষ্প নিষ্কল্ণ নিষ্ফল্ণ

The character ষ্ combined with the characters of the [ə-verge , except with ণ , nə , is realised as (ʃə). When combined with ণ the conjunct character is realised as (ʃnə). The characters ষ্ক , ʃkə , ষ্প , ʃpə , and ষ্ফ , ʃphe are realised as (ʃkə), (ʃpə) and (ʃphə) in ordinary speech, but may be realised as (ʃkə), (ʃpə) and (ʃphə) in formal speech. ষ্ণ , ʃnə , is usually realised as (snə).

1. For transcription, see p.230. 2. Cf. Sanskrit, Ch.3,3.Class 4.1.



Characters which occur with preceding স্ :-

স্ক	স্খ	স্তু	স্খ্	স্ন	স্প	স্ফ	স্ম
ske	skhe	ste	sthe	sne	spe	sphē	sme

The character স্ combined with characters of the ts-*varṅga* is realised as (s). Note the form of the character স্তু, *stu*.

The characters স্ম, *śma*, and স্ম, *śma*, *ekar* or *akar*, are realised initially as (ʃʒ) and (ʃā), as in the words স্মারু, *śmaru* (ʃʒaru) and স্মারক, *śmareke* (ʃārok). These two characters, and স্ম, *śma*, are realised medially and finally as (ʃʃō), as in the words উষ্ম, *uṣma* (uʃʃō) and ভষ্ম, *bhaśma* (bhaʃʃō).

Conjunct characters of Classes 1., 2. and 3. may occur with preceding uṣma characters, such as -

ঊ , -*śiva*, ঊ , -*śtra*, ঊ , -*śtra*, ঊ , -*śtra*.

The following words illustrate the realisation of consecutive consonant characters, when the first is *ekar* in certain positions, in a way similar to the realisation of conjunct characters of this class:

আসত , *asate* (aʃ'to)<sup>1</sup> চশমা , *caśma* (caʃ'ma)

Reading examples<sup>2</sup>

পশ্চাৎ নিশ্চয় নিশ্চিদ্র আশ্চর্য প্রথ নিষ্কৃত নষ্ট জ্যেষ্ঠ  
নিষ্ঠুর কৃষ্ণ নিষ্পত্তি নিষ্ফল গ্রীষ্ম ক্লদ স্থলিত শুক্ল স্পর্শ  
স্বরণ স্বস্ত যান স্মিষ্ট স্পষ্ট স্মৃতিত বিস্ময় স্মৃতি স্ত্রী রাষ্ট্র

b. Characters joined with following স্ or স্ .3

Three characters occur in this group, in Sanskrit loanwords:

ক্ষ , *kṣa*, ঞ্ , -*ṭṣa* and প্স , -*pṣa*. In writing Sanskrit in Bengali

1. Verbal form.

2. For transcription, see p.230.

3. Cf. Sanskrit, Ch.3,3.Class 4.1.b.



script, however, characters corresponding to all the characters given in the Sanskrit section are used. The character **क्ष**, -kṣa, occurs in English loanwords.

Cursive forms in words -

যুক্তাক্ষর      শিক্ষা      যক্ষ্মা      পক্ষ্মন      তীক্ষ্ণ      তৎক্ষণাৎ

The character **ক্ষ** is not calligraphically a conjunct character, and it is often included in the syllabary after the consonant characters. It does not, however, belong properly to the syllabary, as it represents a syllable consisting of two consonants followed by the vowel *e*.<sup>1</sup> Words beginning with this character are placed in dictionaries after words beginning with **क्**, kve. It is realised initially as (kḥo) and medially and finally as (kkḥo). The realisation of the characters **क्ष**, kṣṇa, and **क्ष्म**, kṣma, is illustrated in these examples:

<b>क्खुत</b>	<b>तीक्ष्ण</b>	<b>सूक्ष्म</b>
kṣṇute(khnuto)	tiikṣṇa(tikkhno)	suukṣma(fukkhō)

When an *ekar* character is followed by **क्ष**, the inherent vowel is realised as (o), as in **ल्लक्ष्ण**, ḷlākṣṇa(ḷlokhno); and if **क्ष** is *akar*, the vowel sign may be realised as (æ), as in these words -

**रक्षा**, rakṣa(rokḥa, rokḥæ), **यक्ष्मा**, yakṣma(jokḥæ).

Reading examples<sup>2</sup>

অক্ষর      পরিক্ষিত      তৎক্ষণাৎ      সূক্ষ্ম      আৰ্ক্ষ      মৎসর  
বিপ্সা      অপ্সরা      খিন্ন      দ্বিগ্ন

1. Cf. note on **क्** under Class 2. above.  
2. For transcription, see p.230.

ii. হ joined with anunasika ('nasal') characters<sup>1</sup>.

Three of the anunasik characters are joined with হ :-

হ্ -hṇa হ্ -hṇe হ্ -hṇo

The characters হ্ and হ্ are realised as (nhṇ), and the character হ্ is realised as (mhṇ).

Reading examples<sup>2</sup>

অপরান্ন আহ্নিক চিহ্ন মধ্যাহ্ন ব্রহ্মা প্রাহ্ন পূর্বাহ্ন

Bengali prose passage<sup>3</sup>

একদিন অপেক্ষাকৃত অল্পবয়সে যখন আমার শক্তি ছিল তখন কখনো কখনো ইংরেজি সাহিত্য মুখে মুখে বাংলা করে শুনিয়েছি আমার প্রোতারা ইংরেজি জানতেন সবাই। তবু তাঁরা স্বীকার করে চেন ইংরেজি সাহিত্যের বাণী বাংলা ভাষায় তাঁদের মনে সহজে লাড়়া পেয়েচে। বস্তুত আধুনিক শিক্ষা ইংরেজি ভাষাবাহিনী বলেই আমাদের মনের প্রবেশপথে তার অনেকখানি মারা যায়। ইংরেজি খানার টেবিলে আহ্বারের জটিল পদ্ধতি যার অভ্যস্ত নয় এমন বাঙালীর ছেলে বিলেতে পাড়ি দেবার পথে পি এণ্ড ও কোম্পানীর ডিনার কামরায় যখন খেতে বসে, তখন ভোজ্য ও রসনার মধ্যপথে কাঁটা-চুরির দৌত্য তার পক্ষে বাধ্যগ্রস্ত বলেই ভরপুর ভোজের মাঝখানেও ক্ষুধিত জঠরের দাবী সম্পূর্ণ মিটেতে চায় না। আমাদের শিক্ষার ভোজেও সেই দশা, — আছে সবই অথচ মাঝপথে অনেকখানি অপচয় হয়ে যায়। এ যা বলছি এ কলেজি যজ্ঞের কথা, আমার আজকের আলোচ্য বিষয় এ নিয়ে নয়। আমার বিষয়-

1. Cf. Sanskrit, Ch. 3, 3. Cl. 4. 11.

2. For transcription, see p. 230.

3. Rabindranath Tagore, *Śikṣaṇa Vikirāṇa*, an address on university training, pub. University of Calcutta, 1933.



টা সর্বসাধারণের শিক্ষা নিয়ে । শিক্ষার জলের কল চালানোর কথা নয়, পাইপ যেখানে পৌঁছয় না সেখানে পানীয়েৰ ব্যবস্থার কথা । মাতৃভাষায় সেই ব্যবস্থা যদি গোপ্পদের চেয়ে প্রশস্ত না হয় তবে এই বিদ্যাহারা দেশের মরুবাদী মনের উপায় হবে কী ।

Examples of Bengali spelling terms, including conjunct characters:

গুণ্ড	(pɔ, gœ go, dœ funno ɔ)
হিস্‌সা	(hœ hrɔʃʃo ikar, donto ʃœ hɔʃonto, donto ʃœ akar)
তিকা	(tœ hrɔʃʃo ikar, bœ bɔphola, khɔɳɔ to)
শক্তি	(talobbo ʃɔ, kœ to tate hrɔʃʃo ikar)
জান	(borgiyo ʃœ ʃœ akar, donto nɔ)
জন্ম	(borgiyo ʃɔ, donto nœ mɔphola)
চুড়িত	(d̥hœ hrɔʃʃo ukar, murdhonno nœ d̥hɔ tate hrɔʃʃo ikar, to)
ট্যাঁ	(t̥œ ʃɔpholæ c̥androbindu tate akar)
সন্ধ্যা	(donto ʃɔ, donto nœ dhœ ʃɔphola, tate akar)
ঈশ্বর	(dirgho i, talobbo ʃœ bɔphola, reph rɔ)
আর্য	(ʃori a, ontostho ʃœ reph)
সর্ব	(donto ʃɔ, bœ bɔphola tate reph)
উজ্জয়	(hrɔʃʃo u, cœ chœ rɔphola, ontostho ɔ)
লোক	(talobbo ʃœ lɔphola tate okar, kɔ)
সংস্কৃত	(donto ʃɔ, onuʃʃor, donto ʃœ kɔ tate rɔphola, to)
নিশ্চয়	(nœ hrɔʃʃo ikar, talobbo ʃœ cɔ, ontostho ɔ)
স্রী	(donto ʃœ tœ rɔphola tate dirgho ikar)
শিক্ষা	(talobbo ʃœ hrɔʃʃo ikar, khyœ akar)
গ্রীষ্ম	(gœ rɔphola tate dirgho ikar, murdhonno ʃœ mɔphola)



Transcription of Reading Examples<sup>1</sup>

Chapter 2.

1.1.	ke ko	che cho	ne no	pe po	de do	dhe dho	je jo	te to	the tho
nade nad	nekhe nokh	take tok	pade pod	khepe khop	jhepe jhop	ghape ghop	pathe path	tete to	
kete koto	bere boro	ghene ghono	pete poto	gote gato	pate pato	jere joro	nate nato	toto	
bene bon	jene jon	mene mon	kene kon						
pheteke photok	ketake ketok	jaget jagot	gheteke ghotok						
cetepete cot'pat	ketekete kot'kot	kacamaca kac'mac	dhokamake dhok'mok	khetekhet khot'khot					
theketheke thok'thok	geragera gor'gor	tapetape top'top	taketake tok'tok	dhapedhapa dhap'dhap					
1.11.	kele kol	ghere ghor	mala mal	pere por	bala bol	reke rak	dala dol	rethe roth	phela phol
	jete jato								
bedale badol	galade galod	moleje moloj	negere nagor	galene galon					
kheretere khorotar	phalokere phalokor	kelerave kolorob							
1.111.	jave jab	sabe sob	dese dof	sekhe jakh					
	jete jato	seme somo	hete hoto	here horo					
sehere sahor	seheje sahoj	serale serol	helepho haloph						

1. Brackets are omitted in the phonetic transcription in order to make it possible to place this transcription immediately below each word in the systematic transcription.

khəsekəhəse    tətətətə    tətətətə    dhələdhələ  
khəf'khəf    tət'f'f'    tət'tət    dhəl'dhəl

səhəcərə    səmətələ    ghənərəsə    ghənəkəphə    mədekətə    jələkərə  
səhocər    səmotəl    ghənərəf    ghənəkəph    mədokət    jələkər

2.i.    a    i    u    e    əy    o    əv  
a    i    u    e    oi    o    ou

atə    itə    utə    amə    rñə    uunə    erə    orə    iide  
at    it    ut    am    rin    un    er    or    id

isə    itələ    itərə    isət    utərə    udəkə    etət  
if    itəl    itor    ifot    utor    udok    etot

eləmə    otənə    əvśədhe    əvratə    əvśəne  
elom    oton    oufodh    ourot    oufon

iiśə    oṛə    ərə    əpə    enə    oghe    otə    əvmə    iitə    əge  
ifo    oṛo    ərə    əpo    eno    oghe    oto    oumo    ito    ogo

itə    ibə    ukhə    utə    əyke    olə    oṣə  
ito    ibo    ukho    uto    oiko    olo    ofo

2.ii.    ca    thu    se    go    kuu    jhi    jii    məv    nr    chi  
ca    thu    se    go    ku    jhi    ji    mou    nri    chi

otu    rsi    alo    dao    yui    dheu    ruṭi    krpa    guru  
otu    riṭi    alo    dao    jui    dheu    ruṭi    kriṭa    guru

moṭa    jifu    ruṭpa    mane    hrđi    niiti    hurii    nəvka  
moṭa    jifu    ruṭpa    mane    hrđi    niti    huri    nouka

godhuli    jiivika    kumarii    dagabaji    kəpotika    nirupadhi  
godhuli    jibika    kumari    dagabaji    kopotika    nirupadhi

p.198.    tinə    dudhə    duure    niile    cokhe    meghe    frgale    motalebe  
tin    dudh    dur    nil    cokh    meg    frgal    motaleb

jute    tite    guṛpə    mrge    choṭə    drpə    məvne    ṣolə    dhəvte    mrte  
juto    tito    guṛho    mrigo    choṭo    drpəho    mouno    ṣolo    dhouto    mrto

cakərə    sahəsə    pathərə    pagələ    kəvṣələ    devere  
cakor    səhof    pathor    pagol    kouṣol    debor

toməra    tukəra    kamera    cupeṛi    mucəki    taləpatə    gegənəbhela  
tom'ra    tuk'ra    kam'ra    cup'ṛi    muc'ki    tal'pat    gəgən'bhela

lekh    lekhe    thak    thake    jan    jane    jitebə    jitebo  
lekh    lekho    thak    thako    jan    jano    jit'bo    jit'bo

funətə    funəto    jagələ    jagəlo    bhijetə    tulebə    funələ  
fun'to    fun'to    jag'lo    jag'lo    bhij'to    tul'bo    fun'lo

bei    kəi    khəi    nədii    yedi    yeti    beli    bəsi    səlilə  
boi    koi    khei    nodi    jodi    joti    boli    bofi    solil



calite colit	sehito sohit	jemidare jomidar	ebhidhane obhidhan	gelite golito	polite polito						
pelu polu	peṭu poṭu	medhura modhur	merut morut	beluka boluk	phatura photur	bəhūt bohut					
3. i. a.	ēre ēr	ōre ōr	āke āk	hā hā	cī cī	cō cō	tū tū	tā tā	dhā dhā	rā rā	bhūi bhūi
yūi jūi	tūse tūṣ	ṭhāi ṭhāi	cāca cāc	chēke chēk	dāre dār	ghōṭe ghōṭ	kūdala kūdol	bēdhe bēdhe			
jāka jāka	dāṇi dāṇi	khōpa khōpa	dhūdhula dhūdhul	pēcifa pēcif	hākaṇi hākaṇi						
b.	nem nōṇ	ṭem ṭōṇ	gam gaṇ	emṣa ōṇṣo	demṣane dōṇṣon	semṣa ṣōṇṣa	ṭhemṭhem ṭhōṇṭhōṇ	vamṣo baṇṣo			
semghate saṅghat	semvit ṣaṅbit	paṅṣu paṅṣu	suteram ṣutarāṇ	avetamṣe abotōṇṣo	nemṣuke nōṇṣuk						
semyamano ṣaṇṣamon	vamṣadhore bōṇṣodhor	semṣodhane ṣaṇṣodhon	saṅghatike saṅghatik	kemṣaha kōṇṣaha							
ii. aruh oruh	serah ṣoroh	puneh punoṇ	seheh ṣohoh	niheukhe niṣṣukh	atehpore atoppor						
ṣetayuh ṣetayuh	nabheṣed nabhoṣṣod	ocetah ocetah	duhsemaṣa duṣṣomoy	bahsedana baṣṣodon							
nihkarone nikkeron	haviṣṣeṣe hobifṣeṣ	vanavkah bonoukah	nihkasena nikkaṣon	duhseṣe duṣṣoho							

## Chapter 3.

## Class 1.

pakka pokko	kēkkhete kokkhot	paggere paggot	kaccere kaccor	iccha iccha	lajja lajja	kujjhetika kujjhotika	
ṭhatte ṭhatte	uddiina uddin	seṇṇavate ṣannobato	uttare uttor	utthane utthan	ceṇḍa coudo	fuddhe fuddho	kanna kanna
chappere chopper	chabbife chabbif	ummeda ummed	ṣoyya ṣojja	phulle phullo	maṇṣṣanti monoṣṣanti	hissa hiffa, hissa	
vigēṇa biṣṇo	sahayya ṣahajjo	sēddara ṣaddar	tibbat tibbot	pericchenne poricchenno	vṛddha briddho	citto citto	

## Class 2.

i. ṣakti ṣokti	vagdane bagdan	udgamane udgomon	udghate udghat	oḍbhute oḍbhut	ṣoḍḍe ṣoḍḍo	utpetha utpath	dogdhe dogdho
gupte gupto	utkere utkor	utphulle utphullo	utpenne utponno	cometkara comotkar	utkhate utkhat	ṣaṭkane ṣaṭkon	



ii. ələŋkərə    ʃəŋkhe    səŋgete    səŋghetene    əncələ    ləŋchəna    əŋjələ  
 ələŋkar    ʃəŋkho    ʃəŋgeto    ʃəŋghəʃon    əncol    ləŋchona    əŋjoli

jhəŋjhaʃe    kəŋʃekii    kəŋʃha    paŋʃa    dʱuŋdʱhite    ʃanti    pəŋthii    ninda  
 jhəŋjhaʃ    kəŋʃeki    kəŋʃha    paŋʃa    dʱuŋdʱhito    ʃanti    pəŋthi    ninda

əndhe    səmpədə    ləmphe    əmbere    səmbheve    ʃpəna    ʃiʃpasa    pətnii    pəŋkti  
 əndho    ʃəmpəd    ləmpʱo    əmbor    ʃəmbʱob    ʃən    ʃiggəʃa    potni    pəŋkti

iii.    ʃəkna    səŋləgne    atma    pna    vəgnii  
          ʃəkkā    ʃəŋləgno    attā    pna    baɡgi

iv.    unməgne    ʃənme    nimnokte    vənmeʃe    ʃənmasə  
       unməgno    ʃənmo    nimnokto    baŋŋʃy    ʃənmaʃ

## Class 3.1.

vakye    khyate    yogyeta    cyavene    cyute    jyoti    jyeʃha    ʃyā  
 bakko    khəto    joggota    cobon    cuto    joti    jəʃha    ʃā

ʃhyəŋ    dhyāda    punye    yətyacare    ətyutteme    ətyeʃe    sətye  
 ʃhəŋ    dʱāda    punno    jəttəcar    ottuttomo    ottəy    ʃotto

bhrtyere    mitthys    gedye    dyumani    əbadhye    dhyane    dhyeʃe    nyāʃe  
 bhritter    mitthə    goddo    dumoni    əbaddho    dhən    dheyo    nəy

nyuune    upenyasse    pyane    reʃpye    əbhyasse    myao    kalyane    taləvyə  
 nun    upənnaʃ    pən    rouppo    əbbhaʃ    məo    kollən    taləbbo

vyəŋjəne    ʃyame    mənuʃye    syada    səhye    udyane    səndhya    səŋkhyeʃe  
 bəŋjən    ʃən    mənuʃfo    ʃəd    ʃəjʃho    uddən    ʃəndhə    ʃəŋkheyo

## Class 3.11.

kvecit    pekve    ucchvase    jvale    tvera    tattve    dhvəŋse    vilve  
 kocit    pakko    ucchaʃ    jal    tora    tatto    dhəŋʃo    billo

liʃvere    əvaccha    əŋveŋəne    əvedeʃe    səraəvatii    ʃvase    jihva  
 iʃfor    ʃəccho    əŋnəʃon    ʃədeʃ    ʃəreʃʃoti    ʃaʃ    jibha

## Class 3.111.

a.    terke    muurkhe    vergiiʃe    diirghe    varceə    muurechəne    serjju    verne  
       terko    murkho    bergiyo    dirgho    barceə    murechon    ʃərju    borno

kərttavya  
 kortəbbo

pedarthe    kərddeʃe    ərddeʃe    durname    serpe    səmerpəne    dherma    məryyada  
 podarthe    kərdəʃ    ərdho    durnam    ʃorpo    ʃəmerpon    dharmo    mərjəda

durləbhe  
 durləbh

vehirbhute servve marjene marjene gerhene aryye viserge sarddare  
 bohirkbhuto jarbo marjon marjon garhon arje bishargo jardar

iii. b. kruddhe grame ghreye vajre putre dravya praname priye  
 kruddho gram ghreyo vajro putro drobbo pronam priyo

bhramere vyagre afreye samraje srute sruu vedhre vrate irii  
 bhromor bagro aaroy samraj sruto sru badhro brot ari

hrite afru prarthana andhre ucchreye senkranta paktre sangrehe  
 hrito osru prarthana andhro ucchroy sangkranto paktro sangroho

## Class 3. iv.

ulka velgite phalgune ul'a gelpa gulphe pragelbhe gulme ulbe  
 ulka belgito phalgun ul'a gelpo gulpho pragelbho gulmo ulbo

klanta glepane plavene tebleke mlane flike oflile hlade  
 klanto glepon plabon teblok mlam flik oflil hlal

## Class 4. i.

a. pascat niscaye nischidra ascarye pran nishkrte neste jyeshta  
 pascat niscoy nischidro ascorjo prasno nishkrto nasto jeshtho

nishthure krana nishpetti nishphale griisme skende skhelite  
 nishthur krisno nishpotti nishphol grisho skondo skholite

stabdhe aparje  
 stabdho aparjo

emerene svesthe snane snigdhe apete sphutite viameye  
 firon fotho anan snigdho apotho sphutito bisfay

smrti strii rastre  
 sruti strii rastro

b. aksere periksita tetksanat suksama arkse matsara vipra  
 okkhor porikkhito tetkhanat suksho arkkho matfor bipra

apsara khinna kavirne  
 apara khinna khinno

## Class 4. ii.

operahne ahniko cinhe madhyahne brahma prahne puurvahne  
 aparaho ahnik cinho moddhanho bromha pranho purbbanho



## Bengali prose passage

ekadine opekshakte alpaveyase yekhane amare jekti chila tekhone  
 ukdin opekkhakrito alpobayse jekhon amar jekti chilo takhon

kekhone kekhone imreji sahitye mukhe mukhe banla kore juniyeci. amare  
 kekhone kekhone imreji jahitto mukhe mukhe banla kore juniyeci. amar

protara imreji janatene sevai. tevu tara siikara korecena imreji  
 srotara imreji jan'ten jobai. tobu tara fikar korecen imreji

sahityera varii banlabhasaye tader mone sahaje sapra peyeca. vastute  
 jahitter bani banlabhajay tader mone johoje sapra peyeca. bostute

adhuniko fiksa imreji bhasavahinii bolei amadere manere pravejapethe  
 adhunik jikkha imreji bhasabashini bolei amader moner probes'pothe

tara anekekhani mara yaye. imreji khanara jebile aharere jatile  
 tar onek'khani mara jay. imreji khanar jebile aharer jatil

padhdhati yara abhyasto nay emona banaliire chele bilete pari debara  
 padhdoti jar obbhoasto nay amon banalir chele bilete pari debar

pothe pi endo o kompaniire dinare kamaray yekhane khete base tekhone  
 pothe pi end o kompanir dinar kam'ray jekhon khete baje takhon

bhojya o resanare madhyapethe kaja churire detye tara pakse badha-  
 bhojjo o rojonar moddhopothe kaja churir doutto tar pokkhe badha-

grosto bolei bharapuure bhojere majhakhanee ksudhite jetharere davi  
 grosto bolei bhor'pur bhojer majh'khanee khudhite jethorer dabi

sampurne mitate caye na. amadere fiksare bhojeo sei daja, - ache  
 sompurno mit'e cay na. amader jikkhar bhojeo sei daja, - ache

sevai ethoce majhapethe onekekhani opocaye hoye yaye. e ya boleci e  
 jobi ethoce majh'pothe onek'khani opocay hoye jay. e ja bol'ci e

koleji yojnere katha, amare ajekere alocho visaye e niye naye.  
 koleji jogger katha, amar aj'ker alocco bifoche e niye nay.

amare visayeta sarvesadharanere fiksa niye. fiksare jalere kale  
 amar bifoyeta jorbofadharoner jikkha niye. jikkhar jeler kal

calanore katha naye, paipo yekhane panchaye na sekhane paniiyere  
 calanor katha nay, paip jekhane pouchoy na jekhane panier

vyavesthara katha. matrbhasaye sei vyavestha yadi gopadara ceye pra-  
 babosthar katha. matribhajay sei babostha jodi gopoder ceye pro-

joste na hoye teve ei vidyashara dehere moruvashi manere upaye habe ki.  
 joste na hoy tebe ei biddhara deher morubaji moner upay habe ki.



PRINTED IN  
GREAT BRITAIN  
AT THE  
UNIVERSITY PRESS  
OXFORD  
BY  
CHARLES BATEY  
PRINTER  
TO THE  
UNIVERSITY





CENTRAL ARCHAEOLOGICAL LIBRARY,  
NEW DELHI

Issue Record.

Catalogue No. 417.8/Lam.-3374.

—Lansert, H.M.





